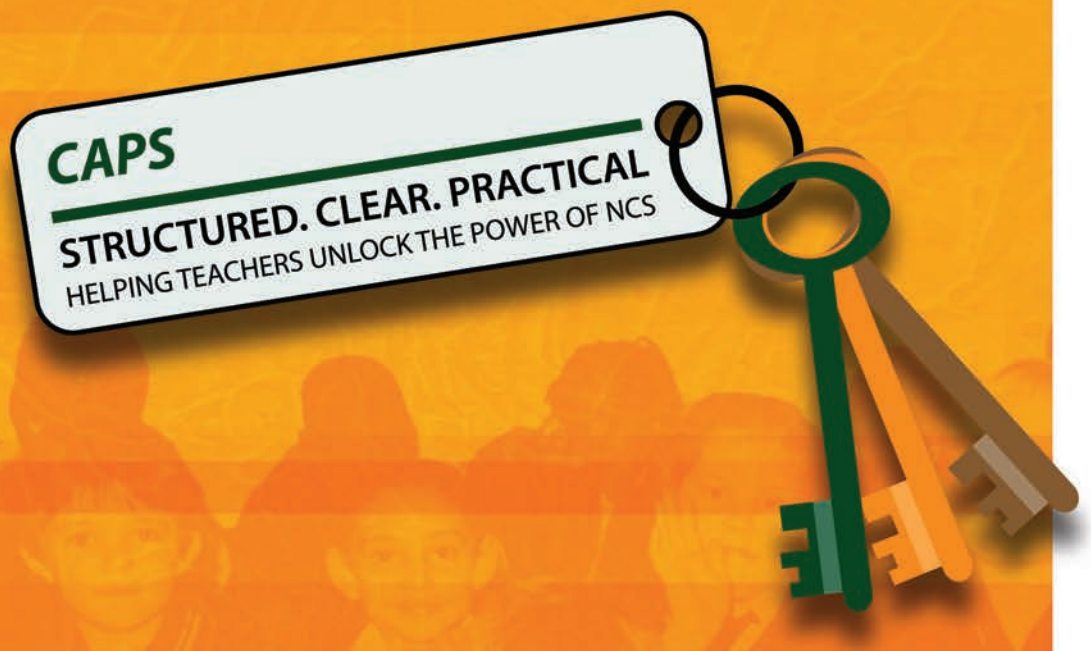
ISIZULU ULIMI LWESIBILI LOKWENGEZA

IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke (uTAHFUZWE)

IsiTatimende seNqubomgomo yoHlelo lweziFundo nokuHlola



IsiGaba esiPhakathi neNdawo AmaBanga 4-6

basic education
Department:
Basic Education
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

basic education

Department:
Basic Education
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

ISITATIMENDE SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO LOKUFUNDA NOKUHLOLA AMABANGA 4-6

ISIZULU ULIMI LWESIBILI LOKWENGEZA

DISCLAIMER

In view of the stringent time requirements encountered by the Department of Basic Education to effect the necessary editorial changes and layout to the Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statements and the supplementary policy documents, possible errors may occur in the said documents placed on the official departmental websites.

There may also be vernacular inconsistencies in the language documents at Home-, First and Second Additional Language levels which have been translated in the various African Languages. Please note that the content of the documents translated and versioned in the African Languages are correct as they are based on the English generic language documents at all three language levels to be implemented in all four school phases.

If any editorial, layout or vernacular inconsistencies are detected, the user is kindly requested to bring this to the attention of the Department of Basic Education.

E-mail: capslangcomments@dbe. gov. za or fax (012) 328 9828

Department of Basic Education
222 Struben Street
Private Bag X895
Pretoria 0001
South Africa
Tel: +27 12 357 3000
Fax: +27 12 323 0601

120 Plein Street Private Bag X9023
Cape Town 8000
South Africa
Tel: +27 21 465 1701
Fax: +27 21 461 8110
Website: http://www. education. gov. za

© 2011 Department of Basic Education

ISBN: 978-1-4315-0485-5

Design and Layout by: Ndabase Printing Solution

Printed by: Government Printing Works

FOREWORD BY THE MINISTER

Our national curriculum is the culmination of our efforts over a period of seventeen years to transform the curriculum bequeathed to us by apartheid. From the start of democracy we have built our curriculum on the values that inspired our Constitution (Act 108 of 1996). The Preamble to the Constitution states that the aims of the Constitution are to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person;
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law; and
- build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Education and the curriculum have an important role to play in realising these aims.

In 1997 we introduced outcomes-based education to overcome the curricular divisions of the past, but the experience of implementation prompted a review in 2000. This led to the first curriculum revision: the *Revised National Curriculum Statement Grades R-9* and the *National Curriculum Statement Grades 10-12* (2002).

Ongoing implementation challenges resulted in another review in 2009 and we revised the *Revised National Curriculum Statement* (2002) and the *National Curriculum Statement Grades 10-12* to produce this document.

From 2012 the two National Curriculum Statements, for *Grades R-9* and *Grades 10-12* respectively, are combined in a single document and will simply be known as the *National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12.* The *National Curriculum Statement for Grades R-12* builds on the previous curriculum but also updates it and aims to provide clearer specification of what is to be taught and learnt on a term-by-term basis.

The *National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12* represents a policy statement for learning and teaching in South African schools and comprises of the following:

(a) Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statements (CAPS) for all approved subjects listed in this document;

(b) *National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12*; and

(c) *National Protocol for Assessment Grades R-12.*

MRS ANGIE MOTSHEKGA, MP
MINISTER OF BASIC EDUCATION

OKUQUKETHWE

ISIGABA SOKU-1: ISINGENISO SESITATIMENDE SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO LOKUFUNDA NOKUHLOLA 3

1.1 Isendlalelo .....

1.2 Ukubuka ngamafuphi 3

1.3 Izinhloso ezivamile zohlelo lwezifundo lwaseningizimu afrika 4

1.4 Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi 6

1.4.1 Isigaba esiyisisekelo 6

1.4.2 Isigaba esiphakathi nendawo 7

1.4.3 Isigaba esiphakeme 7

1.4.4 Ibanga le-10 kuya kwele-12 8

INGXENYE YESI–2 UKWETHULWA KOLIMI LWESIBILI LOKWENGEZA KUMABANGA AMAPHAKTHI 9

2.1 Izilimi kusitatimende senqubomgomo sokufunda nokuhlola 9

2.2 Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi 16

2.3 Izinsizakufunda kanye nezinsizakufundisa ezelekelela ukufunda nokufundisa 17

INGXENYE YESI – 3: OKUQUKETHWE NAMASU OKUFUNDISA AMAKHONO OLIMI 18

3.1 Amakhono jikelele, okuqukethwe, namaºsu 18

3.2 Ukusabalaliswa kwemibhalo kumabanga 4 – 6 24

3.3 Izinhlelo zokufundisa 29

3.4 Okuqukethwe namasu okufundisa isiNgisi njngolimi lokwengeza lwesibili 31

INGXENYE YESI – 4: UKUHLOLA OLIMINI LOKWENGEZA LWESIBILI 89

4.1 Isingeniso 89

4.2 Ukuhlola okungahlelekile noma kwansukuzonke 90

4.3 Ukuhlola okuhlelekile 90

4.4 Uhlelo lokuhlola 93

4.4.1 Izidingo jikelele 93

4.4.2 Izivivinyo 94

4.5 Ukuqopha nokubika 94

4.6 Ukuqinisekiswa kwezinga lomsebenzi wokuhlola 95

4.7 Okwejwayelekile 95

IZINCAZELO ZAMAGAMA 96

ISIGABA SOKU-1: ISINGENISO SESITATIMENDE SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO LOKUFUNDA NOKUHLOLA

1. 1. ISENDLALELO

IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 (uTaHFuZwe) sikhombisa inqubomgomo yezinhlelo zezifundo kanye nezokuhlola emkhakheni wokufunda esikoleni.

Ukuze kwenziwe ngcono ukusetshenziswa kwaso, kwadingeka ukuthi kube nezichibiyelo ezithile ezizoqala ukusebenza ngoMasingana ngonyaka wezi-2012. Kwabe sekubhalwa umqulu owodwa odidiyele *IsiTatimende SeNqubomgomo YoHlelo LweziFundo NokuHlola* saleso naleso sifundo, okuwumqulu othatha isikhundla *seziTatimende zesiFundo, umHlahlandlela woHlelo lokuFunda kanye nomHlahlandlela wokuHlola Izifundo eBangeni-R kuya kwele-12*.

1. 2 UKUBUKA NGAMAFUPHI

(a) IsiTatimende *SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 (kuMasingana ngonyaka wezi-2012)* simele inqubomgomo yokufunda nokufundisa ezikoleni zaseNingizimu Afrika futhi siqukethe lokhu:

(i) NesiTatimende seNqubomgomo yoHlelo LweziFundo nokuHlola kuleso naleso sifundo esifundwayo.

(ii) Umqulu weNqubomgomo, i-*National Policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12, kanye*

(iii) Nomqulu weNqubomgomo*,* i-*National Protocol for Assessment IBanga-R kuya kwele-12 kuMasingana ngonyaka we-2012).*

(b) *IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga*-R-12 *(kuMasingana 2012), sithatha indawo yeziTatimende zoHlelo LweziFundo lukaZwelonke ezimbili ezikhona njengamanje; okuyilezi*

(i) *IsiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke Olubukeziwe IBanga-R kuya kwelesi-9, IGazethi KaHulumeni* ye-23406 zingama-31 kuNhlaba ngonyaka wezi -2002 kanye

(ii) *IsiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke IBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12, IGazethi KaHulumeni* ye-25545 ziyi-6 kuMfumfu ngonyaka we-2003 neye-27594 ziyi-17 kuNhlaba ngonyaka we-2005.

(c) IsiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo lukaZwelonke esibekwe sacaciswa esigabeni u-b(i) kanye no- (ii) siqukethe le miqulu yenqubomgomo elandelayo esizomiswa ukusetshenziswa kuthi esikhundleni sayo kungene i*siTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo IBanga-R kuya kwele -12 kusuka ngonyaka wezi-2012 kuya kowezi-2014:*

(i) Isifundo/isiTatimende sesiFundo, umHlahlandlela woHlelo lokuFunda kanye nomHlahlandlela wokuHlola kwesiFundo IBanga-R kuya kwelesi-9 kanye neBanga le-10 kuya kwele -12;

(ii) Umqulu wenqubomgomo, i*National Policy on Assessment and Qualification for Schools in the General Education and Training Band okwashicilelwa kwaba umthetho kuGovernment Notice No. 124 kuGovernment Gazette No. 29626 mhla ziyi-12 kuNhlolanja ngonyaka wezi-2007.*

(iii) Umqulu weNqubomgomo, i-*National Senior Certificate: iKhwalifikheshini yezinga lesi-4 kuNational Qualifications Framework (NQF),* elishicilelwa laba semthethweni *kuGovernment Gazette No. 27819* mhla zingama- 20 kuNtulikazi ngonyaka wezi-2005;

(iv) Umqulu weNqubomgomo, *isichibiyelo somqulu wenqubomgomo, weNational Senior Certificate: iKhwalifikheshini yezinga lesi-4 kuNational Qualifications Framework (NQF), ukubhekelela izingane ezinezidingo eziyisipesheli,* elethulwa *kuGovernment Gazette, No. 29466* mhla ziyi-11 kuZibandlela ngonyaka wezi-2006, lifakiwe nalo kulo mqulu wenqubomgomo, i-*National Policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12; kanye;*

(v) Nomqulu wenqubomgomo, *isichibiyelo somqulu wenqubomgomo, weNational Senior Certificate: iKhwalifikheshini yezinga lesi-4 kuNational Qualifications Framework (NQF),* ukubhekelela i-*National Protocol for Assessment (IBanga-R kuya kwele-12), elashicilelwa laba semthethweni kuGovernment Notice No. 1267 kuGovernment Gazette No. 29467* mhla ziyi-11 kuZibandlela ngonyaka wezi-2006*;*

(d) Umqulu wenqubomgomo, *i-National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12,* kanye nezigaba ezitholakala esiTatimendeni seNqubomgomo soHlelo lweziFundo nokuHlola njengoba kubekiwe ezahlukweni kusuka kwesesi-2, 3 kanye nesesi-4 kulo mqulu kuyingxenye yemithetho nemigomo *yesiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo IBanga-R kuya kwele-12.* Ngalokho-ke, *ngokuka Section 6 A* we*South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act No. 84 of 1996,)* kwakha isisekelo sokuthi uNgqongqoshe weMfundo esemaZingeni aPhansi akwazi ukunquma imiphumela kanye nemigomo emincane nje okungasukelwa kuyo, kanye nenqubo, nendlela yokwenza ukuhlola kokuphumelela komfundi ukuba kusetshenziswe ezikoleni zomphakathi nalezo ezizimele.

1. 3 IZINHLOSO EZIVAMILE ZOHLELO LWEZIFUNDO ZASENINGIZIMU AFRIKA

(a) *IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke IBanga-R kuya kwele-12* sikhombisa lokho okuthathwa ngokuthi kungulwazi, amakhono namagugu adinga ukufundwa ezikoleni zaseNingizimu Afrika. Lolu Hlelo lweziFundo luhlose ukuqinisekisa ukuthi abafundi bathola babuye basebenzise ulwazi namakhono njengendlela ahambisana ngayo nezimpilo zabo. Ngale ndlela uHlelo lweziFundo lukhulisa ulwazi lwezimo abaphila kuzona, babenozwelo kuzibopho zomhlaba jikelele.

(b) *IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 sihlose lokhu:*

- Ukuhlomisa abafundi, noma ngabe bavela kuziphi izimo zenhlalo yomphakathi nezomnotho, ubuzwe, ubulili, ukukwazi ukusebenzisa umzimba nengqondo/ukuhlakanipha, ngolwazi, amasu nokungamagugu adingekayo ukuze bakwazi ukuzenelisa, nokubamba iqhaza elibonakalayo emphakathini njengezakhamuzi zezwe elikhululekile.
- Ukuvumela abafundi ukuba bangene emikhakheni yemfundo ephakeme.
- Ukwenza kube lula kubafundi ukwedlulela ezikhungweni zemisebenzi ngemuva kokuqeda esikoleni/ imfundo yamabanga aphakeme; kanye
- Nokwedlulisela kubaqashi ulwazi oluphelele ngamakhono nakwazi ukukwenza ngempumelelo umfundi.

(c) *IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele -12 sesekwe yile migomo elandelayo:*

- *Ukuguquka kwezenhlalo yomphakathi*; ukubhekelela ukungalingani kwezemfundo ngesikhathi esedlule ukuze kulungiswe, nokuthi amathuba okufunda alinganayo atholwe yiwo wonke umphakathi;

- *Ukufunda ngokuphapheme nangokuhlolisisa*; ukukhuthaza indlela yokufunda ngokuphapheme nangokuhlolisisa ekufundeni, kunokuthi abafundi bamane bagxishe emakhanda lokho abanikwe khona bebe bengayiqondi incazelo yakho;

- *Ulwazi oluphakeme namakhono aphakeme*, ubuncane obemukelekile umthetho wokulinganisa ulwazi okumele luzuzwe ebangeni ngalinye kumele bucaciswe, kubekwe nemigomo ephezulu okumele izuzwe kuzo zonke izifundo;

- *Inqubekela phambili yolwazi*; okuqukethwe nengqikithi yalelo nalelo banga kukhombise inqubekela phambili ukusuka kokulula kuya kokulukhuni.

- *Amalungelo esintu, ukudidiyela, ubulungiswa bezemvelo nezenhlalo yomphakathi;* ukufaka imigomo nenkambiso yobulungiswa bezemvelo nezenhlalo kanye namalungelo esintu njengoba echaziwe kumThethosisekelo waseNingizimu Afrika. IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 (Jikelele) sinozwela ezindabeni zokwehlukahlukana kwesintu njengobuphofu, ukungalingani, ubuzwe, ubulili, ulimi, ubudala nokukhubazeka kanye nezinye izimo;

- *Ukwazisa ngezinhlelo zolwazi lwendabuko*, ukwazisa ukunotha komlando namasiko aleli zwe, nomthelela obalulekile wokufundisa ngamagugu aqukethwe ngumThethosisekelo okube nawo njengomsuka wenguquko ukusiza ekuguquleni amagugu abafundi; kanye

- *Nokukholakala, uhlonze kanye nokwenza ngempumelelo*, ukuhlinzeka ngohlobo lwemfundo olungaqhathaniseka ngokuqeqesheka nangazo zonke ezinye izindlela njengakwamanye amazwe.

(d) Isitatimende Sohlelo LweziFundo Lukazwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 sihlose ukukhiqiza abafundi abazokwazi:

- Ukubona baxazulule izinkinga, bakwazi nokwenza izinqumo besebenzisa ukucabanga ngokuhlaziya nangobuchule;

- Ukusebenza ngokuzinikela nabanye njengamalungu eqembu;

- Ukulungiselela, bakwazi ukuziphatha bona baphathe nemisebenzi yabo ngokuyikho;

- Ukuqoqa, bahlaziye, bahlele, bahlanganise, bahlolisise ngokucubungula ulwazi.

- Ukuxoxisana ngempumelelo besebenzisa izinto ezibukwayo, ukufanekisa ngezimpawu kanye namanye amakhono olimi ezimweni ezahlukene;

- Ukusebenzisa isayensi nobuchwepheshe ngempumelelo nangokuhlolisisa bekhombisa nokuzinikela kwezemvelo kanye nempilo yabanye; kanye

- Nokukhombisa ukuqondisisa umhlaba njengenkundla yezinhlelo ezihlobene ngokubona ukuthi izimo zokuxazulula izinkinga azenzeki ngazodwana.

(e) *Ukuhlanganisa izinhlobo zabafundi* yikho okumele kube ngumgogodla wokuhlela, ukulungiselela, nokufundisa kuleso naleso sikole. Lokhu kungenzeka kuphela uma bonke othisha bekuqonda kahle ukuthi bazobabona futhi babasize kanjani abafundi abanezihibe ekufundeni, nokuthi bazokuhlelela kanjani ukwehlukahlukana kwabafundi.

Okusemqoka ngokuhlanganisa izinhlobo zabafundi, ukuqinisekisa ukuthi zonke izithiyo ziyabonwa zigudluzwe ngayo yonke indlela ezikoleni, kumbandakanya othisha, amakomidi asemahhovisi ezemfundo, amakomidi ezikoleni, abazali kanye nezikole ezikhethekile ezisetshenziswa njengemithombo yolwazi. Ukugudluza izithiyo emakilasini, othisha bangasebenzisa amaqhinga ahlukene ezinhlelo zezifundo njengalezo ezitholakala eMnyangweni wezeMfundo eyisisekelo: *Guidelines for Inclusive Teaching and Learning (2010).*

1. 4 UKWABIWA KWESIKHATHI

1. 4. 1 IsiGaba esiyisiSekelo

(a) Isikhathi sokufundisa emkhakheni weSigaba Esiyisekelo sinjengoba sikhonjisiwe kuleli thebula elingezansi:

ISIFUNDO	IBANGA-R (AMAHORA)	IBANGA LOKU-1 KUYA KWELESI-2 (AMAHORA)	IBANGA LESI-3 (AMAHORA)
ULimi lwaseKhaya	10	7/8	7/8
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza		2/3	3/4
Izibalo	7	7	7
Amakhono Empilo:	**6**	**6**	**7**
• Ulwazi lokuqala	(1)	(1)	(2)
• Ubuciko bokusungula	(2)	(2)	(2)
• Isifundo sokuzivocavoca	(2)	(2)	(2)
• Okuqondene nomuntu uqobo kanye nokuphila emphakathini	(1)	(1)	(1)
ISAMBA	**23**	**23**	**25**

(b) Isikhathi sokufundisa seBanga-R, 1 neBanga lesi-2, amahora angama-23 kuthi IBanga lesi-3 kube ngamahora angama-25.

(c) Izilimi zabelwe amahora ayi-10 eBangeni-R kuya kwelesi-2 kanye namahora ayi-11 eBangeni lesi-3. Isibalo esiphezulu samahora ayisi-8 nesibalo esiphansi esingamahora ayi-7 sabelwe ULimi lwaseKhaya kanye nesibalo esiphansi esingamahora ama-2 nesibalo esiphezulu esingamahora ama-3 soLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza eBangeni loku-1 kuya kwelesi-2. EBangeni lesi-3 isibalo esiphezulu esingamahora ayisi-8 nobuncane obungamahora ayisi-7 sabelwe iziLimi zaseKhaya kanye nobuncane obungamahora ama-3 nobuningi obungamahora ama-4 oLimini lokuQala lokwEngeza.

(d) Esifundweni samakhono olwazi lokuqala, kwabiwe lhora eli-1 eBangeni-R kuya kwelesi-2 kanye namahora ama-2 njengoba kukhonjisiwe ngamahora akubakaki ethebulini eBangeni lesi-3:

1. 4. 2 IsiGaba esiPhakathi neNdawo (iBanga lesi- 4 kuya kwelesi-6)

Leli thebula elingezansi likhombisa izifundo nesikhathi sokufundisa esibekiwe sesigaba esiphakathi nendawo:

ISIFUNDO	AMAHORA
ULimi lwaseKhaya	6
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza	5
Izibalo	6
Isayensi nobuchwepheshe	3, 5
Isayensi yezokuhlalisana kwabantu	3
Amakhono Empilo • Ubuciko bokusungula • Isifundo sokuvocavoca umzimba • Okuqondene nomuntu uqobo kanye nokuphila emphakathini	**4** **(1. 5)** **(1)** **(1. 5)**
ISAMBA	**27, 5**

1. 4. 3 IsiGaba esiPhakeme

(a) Isikhathi sokufundisa IsiGaba EsiPhakeme simi ngale ndlela:

ISIFUNDO	AMAHORA
ULimi LwaseKhaya	**5**
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza	**4**
Izibalo	**4. 5**
Isayensi yezemvelo	**3**
Isayensi yokuhlalisana komphakathi	**3**
Ezobuchwepheshe	**2**
Isayensi yokuphathwa komnotho	**2**
Ukwazi ngamakhono empilo	**2**
Ubuciko bokusungula	**2**
ISAMBA	**27, 5**

1. 4. 4 IBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12

(a) Isikhathi sokufundisa eBangeni le 10 kuya kwele-12 simi ngale ndlela:

ISIFUNDO	UKWABIWA KWESIKHATHI NGESONTO (AMAHORA)
ULimi LwaseKhaya	**4. 5**
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza	**4. 5**
Izibalo	**4. 5**
Ukwazi amakhono empilo	**2**
Okungenani kungakhethwa izifundo ezintathu **eqoqweni B** Isengezelelo B, Ithebula B1 kuya ku-B8 kumqulu wenqubomgomo, *National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12,* isifundo ngenkombandlela ebhalwe esigabeni sama-28 kumqulu weNqubomgomo obhalwe ngenhla.	**12 (3xAmahora ama-4)**
ISAMBA	**27, 5**

Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi ngesonto kungasetshenziswa kuphela esibalweni esiphansi esidingekayo sezifundo zesiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo lukaZwelonke (TAHFUZWE) njengoba kukhonjisiwe ngenhla, akumele kusetshenziswe kunoma yiziphi izifundo ezengeziwe ohlwini lwenani lezifundo ezivunyelwe. Uma umfundi efisa ukwengeza ezinye izifundo, isikhathi kumele sandiswe ukwenelisa lezo zifundo.

INGXENYE YESI - 2: UKWETHULWA KOLIMI LOKWENGEZA LWESIBILI KUMABANGA AMAPHAKATHI

2.1 IZILIMI ESITATIMENDENI SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO LWEZIFUNDO NOKUHLOLA

Ulimi isikhali semicabango nokuxhumana. Iphinde ibe wumnyombo wesiko esho okuthile okwenziwa ngendlela efanayo phakathi kwabantu kwakha ukuqonda kangcono umhlaba abaphila kuwo. Ukufunda ukusebenzisa ulimi ngokuyimpumelelo kwenza abafundiukuthola ulwazi, ukuchaza ubuzwe, imizwa nemibono, ukuhlangana nabanye, nokulawula umhlaba wabo. Liphinde lunikeze abafundi inhlanganisela yezimpawu ezinothile, ezinamandla nezijulile zemifanekiso nemibono engasetshenziswa ukwakha umhlaba ukunaloku oyiko; ongcono nocacile ukunokuyiko. Kwenzeka ngokusebenza kolimi ukwehluka kwamasiko nokuxhumama komphakathi kuvele kuphindekwakheke, kanti kwenzeka ngokusebenza kolimi ukuthi ukwakheka kubuye kuchibiyelwe, kubebanzi kubuye kucoliseke.

2.1.1 Amazinga olimi

Ukufundwa kwezilimi emazingeni aphakathi kufaka lezizilimi ezigunyaziwe eNingizimu Afrika, ezilandelayo, Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sepedi (Sesotho sa Leboa), Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda, Xitsonga – kanye nezingagunyaziwe. Lezizilimi zingenziwa emazingeni ehlukile.

Ulimi Lwasekhaya ulimi abafundi abalufunda kuqala emakhaya ngokungungwa abantu abakhuluma lolo limi, ulimi abafunda ngalo ukucabanga. ULimi Lwasekhaya lubuye lubizwe ngoLimi Lwebele. Izinga lolimi lokuqala kufanele libe sezingeni lokuthi kungafundiswa ngalo. Ukulalela, ukukhuluma kanye namasu okusetshenziswa kolimi ayothuthukiswa aphucukiswe kodwa kugcizelelwe kakhulu Esigabeni Esiphakathi Semfundo lapho amakhono abafundi okufunda nawokubhala ayothuthukiswa khona. Ithebula elingezansi likhombisa amakhono abalulekile ohlelweni lwezifundo zoLimi Lwasekhaya.

Izinga loLimi lwaseKhaya linikeza ukusebenza kolimi okuveza isisekela samakhono okuxhumana adingekayo ezimweni zenhlalo nasemakhonweni okufunda ngokomqondo adingekayo ekufundeni kulolonke uhlelo lwezifundo. Ukugcizelela kubekwa kakhulu ekufundiseni amakhono okulalela, okukhuluma, okufunda nokubhala kulamazinga. Lelizinga linikeza ukukwazi ukuqamba, ubuhle nemicabango okuzobanika ikhono lokuphinda kuqanjwe, ukufanekisa, nokwandisa ulwazi lomhlaba wabo abaphila kuwo. Noma kunjalo, ukugcizelelwa nokunikezwa isisindo sokuLalela, nokuKhuluma kusukela eBangeni lesi-7 kunyka siyehla ukaleso esinikezwa amakhomo okuFunda nokuBhala.

Izinga loLimi Lokuqala Lokwengeza lususelwa olimini okungelona ulimi lwebebe kodwa olusetshenziselwa imicimbi ethile yokuxhumana emphakathini, okusho indlela yokufunda elandelayo emfundweni. Izinhlelo zezifundo zinikeza ukwesekela okuqinile kulabo bafundi abazosebenzisa ulimi lwabo lokwengeza lokuqala njengolimi lokufunda nokufundisa. Ngasekupheleni kweBanga lesi-9, abafundi kumele ukuba sebekwazi ukusebenzisa ulimi lwasekhaya kanye nolimi lokuqala lokwengeza ngempumelelo nangokuzethemba ezinhlosweni ezehlukene okufaka kuzo nokubhala.

EmaBangeni aphakathi nasemaBangeni aphezulu, abafundi baqinisa amakhono okulalela, okukhuluma, okufunda nokubhala. Kulelizinga abafundi abaningi bafunda kusetshenziswa uLimi Lokuqala Lokwengeza, okuyi-English nokufanele bathole ithuba lokulisebenzisa kakhulu. Ngakhoke ukugcizelela okukhulu kubhekiswe ekusebenziseni uLimi Lokuqala Lokwengeza ngenhloso yokugcizelela ukucabanga nokucabangisisa. Loku kusimamisa amakhono okufunda ngokomqondo, okudingeka ngako ukuba kufundwe izifundo ezifana meSc ience kanye ne-English. Baphinde bazimbandakanye ekusimamiseni ikhono lokucabanga ngobuhle oLimini Lokwengeza.

Ngesikhathi laba bafundi befika ezingeni eliphakeme, kumele bebe sebelukhuluma kahle uLimini lokuQala lokwEngeza lapho bexhumana nabanye kanye nasemakhonweni okuhlakanipha emfundo. Nokho-ke okuhlalukayo, ukuthi kuleli zinga baningi abafundi abasuke bengakakwazi ukusebenzisa uLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza ekuxhumaneni ngempumelelo. Inselelo yeZinga eliphakeme ukuthi laba bafundi balekelelwe futhi kuphinde kwethulwe uhlelo lokubeseka, ukuze bakwazi ukufinyelela emazingeni adingeka eBangeni le-9 Lawo mazinga kumele kube yilawo angenza ukuthi abafundi bakwazi ukusebenzisa uLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza ngempumelelo ezingeni eliphezulu lokukhuluma ngenhloso yokubalungiselela imfundo ephakeme noma izikhungo zemisebenzi.

2.1.1.1 izinhloso ngqangi zokufundiswa kolimi lokwengeza lwesibili

Ukufundwa kolimi lokwengeza lwesibili kufanele kusize abafundi kulokhu:

- Ukuthola amakhono olimi ukuze bakwazi ukuxhumana ngendlela ngolimi kodwa ezingeni eliyisisekelo solimi;
- Ukulalela, ukukhuluma, ukufunda/ukubuka nokubhala ulimi ngokuzethemba nangokulujabulela. Lamakhono nesimo kwenza isisekelo sokufunda okungapheli;
- Khombisa, ngomlomo nangokubhala, ngemizwa ukuze ukhululeke ngolimi lolo;
- Sebenzisa ulimi nemicabango ukuthola/ukufunda kabanzi nagwe namasiko ehlukene kanye nangomhlaba/ indawo abazithola kuyo/abahlala kuyo;
- Sebeznisa ulimi ukuthola nokugcina ukuxhumana ngengqikithi. Ulwazi lolimi luyikhono elibalulekile futhi lwakha nesisekelo sokufunda;
- Sebenzisa ulimi njengendlela yokunikeza ulwazi ngezihloko ezejwayelekile; ukukhuluma ngezingqikithi ezejwayelekile; kanye nokufunda umbhalo ukuze uzijabulise, ulwazi oluyisisekelo kanye nokuxhumana.

2.1.1.2 Ukufundisa ulimi lokwengeza lwesibili

Ukuze ukwazi ukufunda ulimi lokwengeza kahle, kufanele uzejwayeze lona kakhulu ukuze ukwazi ukulakha nokulukhuluma. Othisha kufanele baqinisekise ukuthi abafundi bayalulalela babuye balufunde futhi lolimi lokwengeza ngesikhathi esibekelwe lona ngezizathu ezahlukene. abafundi badinga amathuba okulalela ulimi lokwengeza ukuthola ulwazi nokuluqonda (isib. inkulumompikiswano) nokuzijabulisa ngalo (isib.iculo). okubaluleke kakhulu, badinga amathuba okulufunda nokulubuka ulimi lokwengeza ukuze bathole ulwazi (isib.imiyalelo yokwenza itiye), ukuzijabulisa (isib. indaba elula). Uphenyo luyakhombisa ukuthi indlela engcono yokuthuthukisa ulwazimagama olubanzi ukuthi kufundwe imibhalo efanele. Kubaluleke kakhulu ukuthi imibhalo ekhulunywa ngomlono, ekubhalwayo kanye nekubukwayo iba sezingeni elifanele labafundi. Uma imibhalo inzima kakhulu, abafundi bazodikibala kungabe kusaba nokufunda, uma futhi ilula kakhulu, angeke kube nenselelo kubafundi kanjalo bazofunda okuncane kakhulu. Indima edlalwa uthisha ofundisa ulimi yile yokuthi aqinisekise ukuthi numbhalo usezingeni lalowomfundi. Kumabanga amaphakathi, abafundi kufanele balalele babuye bafunde imibhalo esezingeni lokuthuthuka kwamakhono olimi.

Abafundi nabo kufanele balusebenzise njalo ulimi lokwengeza. Badinga amathuba okululalela, ukulukhuluma, ulufunda kuthi, kancane, balubhale ulimi lokwengeza ukuzithuthukisa (isib. inkulumompikiswano), ukuthutkisa ikhono lokuqamba (isib. ukucula iculo, ukulingisa, njll), ukuthutkisa amakhono okuxhumana (isib. ukuveza umbono, imihlangano nokubingelela).

Abafundi kufanele baqonde inhloso yokulukhul;uma. Kuwona wonke amabanga amaphakathi, abafundi kufanele benze umsebenzi ngolomo ohambisana nokuthjuthuka kwabo kumakhono olimi. Kubalulekile ukuthi abafundi bathola umbiko njalo ngesikhathi ngemisebenzi yabo eyenziwa ngomlomo ukuze bazi ukuthi bazithuthukisa kuphi

kanjani. Indima ebalulekile kathisha wolimi ukunikeza umbiko osezingeni eliphezulu, okuyikhona okuyingqikithi yokuhlola okuhle.

Abafundi nabo kufanele bazi okuyisisekelo solimi: uhlelo, ulwazimagama, isipelingi kanye nezimpawu zokubhala. Ngokwejwayelekile, othisha basebenza ngazo lezinto zolimi ngokwlengqikithi. Isib.bangenza abafundi bazi ngokwakheka nezimpawu ezisetshenziswe uma kunikwa izinkombandlela (imiyalelo esetshenziswe). Kunendawo futhi yokufundisa okuyisisekelo ngqo/ngendlela ezwakalayo kanye namathuba okuzilolonga.

Uma kuhlelwa imisebenzi yomjikelelzo wamasonto amabili, othisha kufanele basebenzise amakhono olimi. Kanye nesisekelo solimi. Kufanele bakhethe inhlobo yombhalo noma isihloko/indikimba ezothandwa abafund; abafundi angeke bakwazi ukufunda uma bengakhuthazwa noma babambe iqhaza. Isib. isihloko semishwana/ semisho okungaba “isikole sami”. Othisha bangethula isihloko ngokuthi abafundi balalele/bafunde, bakhe ulimi nolwazi lolwazimagama oludingekayo uma kukhulunywa. Isib. abafundi bangafunda umbhalo omfishane bethula ulwazimagama nokwakheka kolimi. Uma abafundi sebelwejwayele ulimi oludingekayo lwesihloko, bangabhala imishwana/imisho. Lokhu kuzonikeza amathuba amaningi okusebenza ngolimi.

Othisha kumele banikeze umphumela njalo nje babuye babnikeze uhlolo olufanele lwemisebenzi ekugcineni.

- Kumabanga 4 – 6, nakhu okubalulekile:
- Akugxilwe kakhulu ekukhulumeni nasekulaleleni.
- Akube noxhaso oluqhubekayo ukuthuthukisa ulwazimagama, imisho nokwakhiwa kwezigaba, nohlelo ngokwengqikithi.
- Abafundi absebenze ngezinhlobo ezahlukene zemibhalo, kufaka imibhalo enemifanekiso. Lemibhalo iya ngokuqina uma beqhubeka namabanga abo.

2.1.2 Amakhono olimi

Inqubo yokufunda lolimi lwasekhaya kubekwe njengoba kulandela:

1	Ukulalela nokukhuluma
2	Ukufunda nokubukela
3	Ukubhala nokwethula
4	Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi

UkuLalela nokuKhuluma

Ukulalela nokukhuluma kuyinsika yokufunda kuzo zonke izifundo**.** Ngokulalela nokukhuluma okuyimpumelelo, abafundi baqoqa ulwazi baluhlanganise bazakhele imiqondo baxazulule izinkinga baveze imibono. Amakhono okulalela nokucophelela asiza abafundi ukuthola okungamagugu nendlela yokubuka izinto eziqukethwe embhalweni kanye nokufaka nezinselele nolimi olukhohlisayo.

Ezingeni eliphakathi, **uLimi lokwengeza lwesibili** luzosebenzisa amakhono okukhuluma ukuze bakhulume baphinde bakhulume ngokushiwoyo. Bazokwakhela emakhonweni athuthukiswe emazingeni aphansi ukuze bakwazi ukugcina inkulumo enjana, izingxoxo nokuthulwa ngomlomo okufishane.

Kulelizinga, ulimi olukhulunywa abafundi kusafanele luthi ukuzimeleliswa (isib. Lulolongwe bese lisekelwa, isibonelo, ngohlaka lolwazimagama nemisho). Uthisha udinga ukwenza isiqiniseko sokuthi bonke abafundi bathola amathuba okukhuluma izilimi zabo zasekhaya. Ngoba abafundi banganenqubekela phambili emazingeni angafani, uthisha

kufanele ache amathuba okukhuluma (isib. Imibuzo ayibuzayo) ibesezingeni lomfundi ngamunye. Njengoba umfundi eqhubeka namabanga, uthisha kumele alindele ukuba abafundi bakhulume kakhulu namagama abawashoyo abe made. Abafundi bazodlulisela amakhono ezilimini zabo zokwengeza.

Isikhathi sokufundisa kufanele sifake umsebenzi omfishane wansukuzonke wokulalela nokukhuluma kanye nemisebenzi egxilile emide yesonto lonke.

Kumabanga 4- 6, othisha kumele bahlukanise umsebenzi wokulalela ngezigaba ezintathu:

- **Ukulungiselela ukulalela:** lokhu kulungiselela abafundi ukuthi bakwazi ukulalela umbhalo okhulunywa ngomlomo ongolimi lokwengeza. Isib, uthisha angasebenzisa umbhalo onemifanekiso bese ebuza imibuzo eyejwayelekile, kugxilwe kakhulu kwimibuzo edinga ukuthi abafundi balalele umbhalo/indaba abayizwa okokuqala.

- **Ngesikhathi belalele:** kuyinto enhle ukuthi uthisha afunde umbhalo/indaba izikhathi eziningi abafundi belalele, abuze imibuzo ehlukahlukene ngesikhathi. Kuyasiza ukwedlulela emibuzweni eyenza abafundi banikeze izimpendulo ezinemininingwane. Lokhu kuthuthukisa amasu abafundi okulalela.

- **Emumva kokulalela:** abafundi baphendula imibuzo eqhubekayo, babuke futhi amanothi, basebenzise ulwazi (isib.ukulebula isithombe).

Ukukhuluma kwenzeka ngendlela engahlelekanga ekilasini, isib.ukusebenza ngamaqembu. Abafundi bayasidinga isikhathi sokuzilolongela ingxoxo engahleliwe abangaba nayo ngaphandle kwasekilasini. Othisha kufanele banikeze imiyalelo kwinkulumo ehleliwe kanye nokuyethula; isib.ehleliwe, ukufunda kuzwakale, nokunye. Lokhu kudinga izitebhu ezimbili:

- Ukulungiselela nokuhlela imiqondo kanye nolwazi
- Ukuzilolonga nokwethula:ukukhombisa ukuqwashiseka ngabalaleli nangengqikithi; ukusetshenziswa kolimi ngendlela efanele nengenaphuta, ukwethula ngokukhululeka, ukusetsheniziswa kwamasu ngomlomo nangezandla, njll.

Ukufunda nokubukela

Amakhono okufunda nokubukela abalulekile ekufundeni kulona lonke inqubo yokufunda, kanye nokubamba iqhaza ngokuphelele emphakathini, emsebenzini. Abafundi bathuthukisa amakhono okufunda ngemibhalo eyejwayelekile, kufaka nemibhalo enemifanekiso, ukuze bathole ulwazi.

Uma kunesidingo, sebenzisa indlela yokufunda ngokuhlanganyela ekuqaleni kwebanga lesi 4 ukuhola kahle abafundi baze bazofika kulelizinga. Lendlela ingasetshenziswa ngokuphindelela uma kunezincwadi ezanele ezikulelizinga. lokhu kungashintshaniswa nokuxoxa indaba. Uma izincwadi ezikulelizinga zingekho, sebenzisa imibhalo etholakala encwadini yokufunda. Sebenzisa izindlela ezifana nalezo zokufundela ikilasi noma ufunde nalo.

Sebenzisa indlela yokufunda ngokuholwa/ngayedwa/ngababili, kancane kancane uholele abafundi ekutheni bakwazi ukufunda ngayedwa. Ukufunda ngayedwa okubekiwe/okunqunyelwe kufanele kulandelwe nesikhathi esibekelwe lokho saziwe/sisetshenziswe gqugquzela abafundi ukuthi bbafunde ngayedwa besebenzisa isikhathi abasitholayo.

Hlela umsebenzi wolwazi ukuqinisekisa ukuthi abafundi bayakuqonda abakufundayo.

Inqubo yokufunda

Ukwethulwa kohlelo lokufunda kunesandulela kufunda, ukufunda kanye nokufunda kwakamuva. Imisebenzi uthisha anagasiza ngayo abafundi, kafushane ingabekwa kanje:

Ukulungiselela ukufunda:

- Ukuvuselela ulwazi lwangaphambili nokwenza uxhumano ngalo nalokho okusha.
- Ukubheka isisusa, umlobi, usuku umbhalo owethulwa ngalo kanye nenhlobo yombhalo.
- Ukubheka ngokushesha/ukuthi halamuzi isigaba sokuqala sengxenye – wakha okungahle kulindelwe.

Ukufunda:

- Funda udamane uma ukwenzela ukuhlola ukuthi uyayiqonda lento ayifundayo nanokuthi ikwazi ukuhlala emqondweni
- Sebenzisa indikimba ukuthola incazelo yamagama angaziwa, uma kungenzeki, sebenzisa isichazamazwi
- Yakha umfanekiso walokho okufundwayo
- Qhubeka ufunde nanoma ezinye izingxenye zingezwakali ziyindida.
- Phinda futhi uyifunde ingxenye uma ukuze bayiqonde kahle. Phinda ufunde kuzwakale izingxenye ezididayo, ngokungajahi, noma kokubili.
- Cela omunye akusize ukuze uyiqonde ingxenye enzima
- Hlanganisa amamaki okufunda namanye amaphuzu
- Khuluma ngalokho okufundwayo

Emumva kokufunda:

- Uma kunesidingo sokukhumbula ulwazi oluthile, veza imibono ebalulekile kanye nemininingwane embalwa eyelekelelayo
- Bhala amgama amqoka ukucacisa kanye nokukhumbula imibono evelele
- Cabanga ngemibuzo emisha esihlokweni
- Ukuqonda – qinisekisa umbhalo ngokuthi uwuqonde
- Yelula ukucabanga – sebenzisa imibono etholakala embhalweni

Ukubhala nokwethula

Ukubhala: yithulusi elinamandla lokuxhumana elivumela abafundi ukuthi bakwazi ukuxhumana nokwakha imiqondo nemibono ngokufanele. Ukuzilolonga njalo ngokubhala ngemibhalo eyahlukene eyejwayelekile, amathaski nezifundo kwenza abafundi bakwazi ukuxhumana ngokomsebenzi nangokuziqablela. Inhloso ukwethula amakhono okubhala ukuthuthukisa nokwethula imibhalo ofanele wokubhalwa. Kumabanga amaphakathi, **ulimi lokwengeza lwesibili abafund**i bazodinga ukwelekelelwa ngokucophelela babuye baholwe ukuthuthukisa amakhono okubhala.

Ukubhala kubalulekile ngoba kuphoqelela abafundi ukuthi bacabnge ngohlelo nesipelingi. Lokhu kugqugquzela abafundi ukuthi baluhlele ulimi, basheshe bafunde ulimi ngokucophelela. Abafundi bazofunda ukubhala imibhalo eyahlukene abayiqambile kanye neyolwazi, baqala ngokusebenzisa uhlaka lokubhala ukwelekelela, kancane kancane bafunde ukubhala umbhalo othile ngokuzimela.

Babuye basebenzise inqubo yokubhala ukukhiqiza imibhalo ehlelekile, nenohlelo olulungile.

Inqubo yokubhala elandelwayo

- Ukubhala nokuqamba imibhalo uhlelo olufaka lezizigaba ezilandelayo:
- Ukulungiselela ukubhala/ukuhlela
- Ukubhala kokuqala
- Ukubukeza, ukulungisa amaphutha , ukufunda ukuze uqinisekise
- Ukwethula

Abafundi badinga ithuba lokuzilolonga ngalohlelo kanti kufanele:

- Bakhethe injongo nabantu abababhalelayo kanye nezibukeli ukuze kakhethe umbhalo abangahle bawubhale;
- Babeka imibono besebnzisa, isib.izinhla, imiqondomdwebo, namashadi;
- Funda imibhalo efanele, khetha ulwazi olufanele bese uhlela imibono;
- Khiqiza umbhalo wokuqala ofaka inhloso, izibukeli, isihloko nesimo sombhalo
- Funda umbhalo wokuqala bese uthola imibono yabanye (abalingani bakho bekilasi noma uthisha);
- Lungisa amaphutha ubuye ufnde ukuqinisekisa umbhalo wokuqala; bese
- Ukhiqiza umsebenzi ohlanzekile, obonakayo noedithiwe.

Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi

Ulwazi oluhle lohlu lwamagama nohlelo lolimi luhlinzeka ngesisekeleo sokuthuthukiswa kwamakhono (ukulalela, ukukhuluma, ukufunda nokubhala) oLimini Lokuqala Olungeziwe EZingeni Eliphakathi abafundi bazokwakhela kusisekelo esibekwe amaBangeni R ukuya ku-3.

Ngokusebenzisa imibhalo ehlukene abafundi belula ukusetshenziswa kohlu lwamagama kanye nokusebenzisa kahle ukuqonda **ukwakheka kolimi**. EZingeni Eliphakathi, abafundi boLimi Lokuqala Olwengeziwe bazoqaphela kakhudlwana amagma kanye nokwakhiwa kolimi abakwazela eZingeni Eliyisisekelo, bahlolisise indlela ulimi olungeziwe elisebenza ngayo futhi balusebenzise ngokuqonda, futhi basebenzise lokhu ukwakha lokuhlola ukusetshenziswa kolimi lwabo, ikakhulukazi uma bebhala.

Abafundi bazakuhlola ukuthi **ulimi lusetshenziswa kanjani**, futhi bazakhele ulimi oluhlanganelwe lokukhuluma ngolimi (‘ulimi lolimi’/‘ulimi oluchaza ulimi’), bahlola imibhalo yabo neyabanye bajule ngokomqondo, ukuphumelela nokushaya emhlolweni. Bazokwazi ukusebenzisa lolu ulwazi ukulinga ulimi ukwakha umqondo (oqhamuka eezingeni legama nelomusho ukuya embhalweni wonke), futhi babone ukuthi uhlobana kanjani umbhalo nendikimba yawo.

Kulindelekile ukuthi ukwakheka nokusetshenziswa kolimi kuzofundiswa ngokwendikimba njengoba kufundiswa futhi kuthuthukiswe amanye amakhono olimi. Kodwa-ke, esiBangeni Eliphakathi, imizuzu engamashumi amathathu ibekwe eceleni ukufundisa ngayo okuhleliwe kanye nokulolonga ukwakheka nokusetshenziswa kolimi. Izinhlelo zokufundisa ziqukethe uhlu lwezinto okufanele zifundiswe ebangeni ngalinye. Lezi zintozifakwe ohlwini ekuqaleni kwalelo nalelo

themu. Uma kukhethwa imibhalo ngokulalela nokukhuluma ukhethelwa umjikelo ngamunye wamasonto amabili, qinisekisa ukuthi iqukethe okunye kwezinto zolimi ofuna ukuzifundisa ngalelo themu. Yenza imisebenzi emayelana nale mibhalo ezovumela abafundi ukuba basebenzise lezi zinto, endikimbeni. Ngokunjalo, imibhalo yokubhala abafundi abazoyibhalo izombandakanya izintozolimi. Khokhelaabafundi bakho ngokusetshenziswa ngendlela nangemfanelo kwalezi zinto. Khetha ezinye zezinto abafundi bakho abazithola zinzima futhi balolonge ngokuhleliwe (kule mizuzu engemashumi amathathu ngeviki ebekelwe eceleni ukwenza lokhu).

2.1.3 Iz indlela yokufundisa ulimi

Izindlela zokufundisa ulimi kulezizincwadi kugxile embhalweni, ngokuxhumana, ukufunda ngokudidyela.

Indlela egxile embhalweni neyokuxhumana zonmbili zincike ekukhizweni nasekusetshenzisweni okuqhubekayo kwemibhalo.

Indlela egxile embhalweniA ifundisa abafundi ukuncintisana, ukuzethemba nokuba abafundi ababalulekile, ababhali, izibukeli, nababhali bemibhalo. Kufaka ukulalela, ukufunda, ukubukelanokuqonda imibhalo. Imibhalo eyiqinisoyiyona eyisizinda solwazi, sokuxhumana, ukufunda okuhlanganyelayo/okuhlanganisiwe nokufundiswa kwezilimi. Indlela egxile embhalweni ifaka ukukhiqizwa kwezinhlobo ezahlukene zemibhaloelula yezinhloso ezithile.

Indlela yokuxhumana iphakamisa ukuthi abafundi kufanele babe nolwazi olwanele ekufundeni ulimi oluhlosiwe namathuba amaningi okuzilolonga ukufunda ulimi. Abafundi bafunda ukufunda ngokuthi bafunde babuye bafunde nokubhala ngokuthi ibe mining imisebenzi yokubhala.

Indlela yohlelo isetsheniziswa uma abafundi bekhiqiza imibhalo ngomlomo nangokuyibhala. Abafundi benza izigaba ezahlukene zokulalela, zokukhuluma, zokufunda kanye nezinhlelo zokubhala. Kufanele bacange ngabalandeli nenhloso. Lokhu kuzobenza bakwazi ukuxhumana nokuveza abakucabangayo ngokwemvelo. Isib. ukufundiswa kokubhala akugxili emkhiqizweni kuphela kodwa nakwinhloso nohlelo lokubhala. Ngesikhathi sohlelo lokubhala, abafundi bafundiswa ukuthi bangyenza kanjani imibono, ukucabanga ngenhloso kanye nezibukeli, ukubhala umbhalo wokuqala, ukulungisa amaphutha umsebenzi wabo, nokwethula umkhiqizo obhaliwe oxhumanisa imicabango yabo.

Izindlela zokufundisa imibhalo/ukusebenza ngemibhalo

Isizathu esikhulu sokufundisa umbhalo ekilasini ukwenza amathuba okusebenzisa amakhono olimi afundiwe. Ukufundiswa kwemibhalo akuyona into elula, kodwa kuyize ngaphandle kwemicabango nokwethembeka ekuhumusheni nasekuphawuleni kwabafundi uqobo. Ngaphandle kokuthi bafunde ukuthi bangayiqonda kanjani imibhalo ngokwabo, angeke bafunde lutho.

Izinhlela zokufundisa imibhalo zifaka okunye noma konke lokhu okulandelayo:

- Zama ukufunda yonke imibhalo ekilasini ngaphandle kokuphazamisa eminye imisebenzi.kubalulekile ukuthi abafundi babe nemibono ecacile ngokwenzekayo ngokwezinga eliphansi lombhalo. Funda imibhalo eminingi ekilasini, qinisekisa ukuthi abafundi bayazifunda nezinkondlo.
- Imisebenzi ebhalwayo efuna ukuqonda okuyisiekelo kombhalo ofundiwe kungabasiza ukuthuthukisa amazing amakhono olimi nokunconywa kwalawo asebewatholile. Ingxoxo yekilasi nayo ingabasisa uma bonke abafundi bebamba iqhaza futhi iholela kulokho okubhalwayo.
- Okokugcina, ukusebenza ngemibhalo kufanele kweniziwe ngokubambisana ninonke.

Lokhu okulandelayo izinhlobo zemimibhalo efingqiwe etholakala kumabanga amaphakathi nokusetshenziswa kolimi okuthatwe kulezinhlobo zemibhalo. Lolwazi luzosiza ekuhleleni kwemisebenzi yemibhalo eyahlukene ukuze abafundi bakwazi ukubamba iqhaza. Khetha okumbalwa ukuze ukwazi ukunikeza umfundi ngamunye isikhathi sokumsiza uma ufundisa lezinhlobo zemibhalo.

2.2 UKWABIWA KWESIKHATHI

Isikahthi sokufundisa ulimi lwesibili lokwengeza esinconyiwe kumabanga amaphakathi yihora nohhafu ngesonto. Konke okuqukethwe olimini kunikeziwe ngomjikelezo wamasonto amabili (amahora ama – 3). Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi kwamakhono ehlukene kuphakanyiswe kanje:

Amakhono	Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi ngesonto (amahora)	Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi ngomjikelezo wamasonto amabili (amaminithi)	%
Ukulalela nokukhuluma	**1.5**	75	40
Ukufunda nokubukela: isifundo sokuqondisisa nombhalo		55	30
Ukubhala nokwethula		35	20
Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi (lokhu kuhlanganiswe ndawonye kumakhono ama-4)		15	10
Isamba		180 (amahora ama – 3)	100

2.3 IZINSIZAKUFUNDA KANYE NEZINSIZAKUFUNDISA EZELEKELELA UKUFUNDA NOKUFUNDISA

- Umfundi ngamunye kufanele abe nalokhu:

a) Incwadi yokufunda evumelekile

b) Incwadi yokufunda/incwadi yokufunda enalokhu/izinhlobo zemibhalo:

- Izindaba
- Izinkondlo
- Imibhalo yolwazi
- Imibhalo yezenhlalakahle

c) Isichazamazwi noma uhlu lwamagama

d) Ukutholakala kezincwadi zokufunda ukuze onke amazing anakekeklwe, isib. izincwadi zokufunda ezinezindaba ezanele noma imibhalo eyanele futhi esezingeni lekilasi nelsikole.

e) Imibhalo yokufunda ngokuhlanganyela ebangeni lesi – 4. Lokhu kungaba zincwadi noma imibhalo ekhulisiwe noma incwadi evunyelwe noma izincwadi zokufunda.

- Uthisha kumele abe nalokhu:

a) Usomqulu ka-CAPS

b) Inqubomgomo yolimi (LiEP)

c) Izincwadi zokufunda zolimi ezisetshenziswa abafundi nezinye izinsiakufundisa ngenhloso yokwengeza kulezo ezivunyelwe

d) Incwadi yokufunda/izincwadi zokufunda ezinezinhlobo zemibhalo evunyelwe

e) Isichazamazwi nezincwadi eziyizinsia (ezinolimi olulodwa, ezimbili eziningiamaesayiklophidiya, izincwadi zezinhlelo njll).

f) Ifayela kathisha: lokhu kungaba ifayela elinezinsizakufundisa eziqoqelwe ndawonye uthisha noma incwadi kathisha eshicilelwe

g) Ukutholakala kwemibhalo/izincwadi zokufunda ekilasini/esikoleni/kumtapo wolwazi womphakathi ukuze izohola ukufunda kwabafundi

h) Izinsiza ezibonwayo nezilalelwayo

INGXENYE YESI–3: OKUQUKETHWE NAMASU OKUFUNDISA AMAKHONO OLIMI

3.1 OKUQUKETHWE NOHLELO LOKUFUNDISA AMAKHONO OLIMI

Lokhu okulandelayo okuqukethwe, amakhono kanye namasu okutholakala kumaqhinga okufundisa

Ithebula lokuqukethwe, amakhono namasu:

	Amakhono	Amabanga 4 – 6
Ukulalela nokukhuluma	• Ukulalela ngokuqondisisa • Ukulalela ukuze uthole ulwazi • Ukuphimisa • Ukulalela ukuze uzijabulise • Izindlela ezahlukene zokuxhumana: - Ingxoxo - Indlela yokwenza/yenqubo - Ukuxoxa indaba - Ukulingisa - Ingxoxo yeqembu - Ingxoxo emfushane nemilolozelo - Imidlalo yolimi - Izigameko ezingamaqiniso nezake zakwehlela *Bheka kumumo osetshenziswa ekukhulumeni isiNgisi*	**Uhlelo lokulalela** • Ukulungiselela ukulalela • Ngesikhathi sokulalela • Ukulalela ngokuqondisisa - Ukugcina imibono ebalulekilengokuyixoxa uphindelela - Ukuchaza - Ukulalela imibuzo elula ubuye uyilandele • Emumva kokulalela **Inqubo yokukhuluma** • Ukuhlela izinto ngokulandelana kanye nokucwaninga • Ukwethula nokuzilungiselela **Ukuxhumana ngenhloso yokuhlalisana** • Izingxoxo ezilula • Ukuxoxa ngokunikezana amathuba • Ukukhuthaza ukusetsheniziswa kolimi lokwengeza • Ukubuza ubuye uphendule imibuzo **Ukuxoxa ngezigameko** • Ukwethula ngokungahlelekile kwezigameko ezejwayelekile • Uhlaka olulungile, ulwazi magama kanye nezimiso zolimi

	Amakhono	Amabanga 4 – 6
Ukufunda nokubukela	• Izinhlobo zemibhalo ezinconyiwe: • Izindaba, isib. izindaba zangempela eziqanjiwe, izindaba zakudala/zendabuko (izinkolelo nemizekelo, izinganekwane, izinsumansuman), izindaba zezehlo, izithombe ezixoxa indaba ezinamagama ngalinye/ngamabili • Inkondlo/iculo • Imibhalo yolwazi eyisingeniso, isib. izinkambiso, imibiko yolwazi • Imibhalo yolwazi, isib. izimemo, amakhadi, izincwadi • Imibhalo yabezindaba isib. izikhangisi, imibiko, iziqeshana • Imibhalo ebukelwayo:ukukhangisa (amaphosta, amapheshana, izikhangiso), • Amakhathuni, iziqeshana zamakhomikhi, imidwebo/amagrafu/amathebuli/amashadi/ izithombe/imidwebo • Iziqeshana zokuqonda • Imibhalo yokufunda kakhulu elungiselelwe • Imibhalo yolwazi	**Amasu okufunda nokubukela:** Sebenzisa amasu okuzilungiselela ukufunda, ukufunda kanye nawangemuva kokufunda : • Ukuqonda umbhalo • Ukufunda umbhalo ngokujulile (ukufunda ngokuqondisisa) • Ukukhombisa ukufunda ngokuzimela ukhombisa inqubekela phambili (efunda noma yini efundela ukuzijabulisa, ulwazi nokufunda) Yethula kubafundi lokhu: • **Izinto ezitholakala embhalweni** –izihloko, imifanekiso, izihlokwana, ukuhlela kusetshenziswa izinombolo, amagama ayizihlokwana, ezisematheni, indlela yokubhala • **Izakhiwo zombhalo** –izinhla, ukuhleleka, ukuchaza, izinkambiso, amaphuzu abalulekile kanye nokuxoxa ngokulandelana (kwezigameko) • **Izingxenye zencwadi** – ikhasi elinesihloko, ikhasi elinokuqukethwe, izahluko, iglozari nokunye • **Amasu okufunda nokubukela** - Ukufunda uphindelela - Ukucacisa - Ukufinyelela esiphethweni/ukunikeza owakho umqondo opinion • **Ulimi olubonakalayo –** (izinhlobo zemibhalo edwetshiwe nebukwayo isib. izikhangisi, imiyalezo, amaphosta, amakhathuni, amakhomikhi, izithombe): • Ukufundwa kwemibhalo esobala **Inkondlo/iculo** • Umqondo osobala • Umlayezo • Imifanekisomqondo, isib. umlolozelo, isigqi, ukuphindaphinda **Indaba** • Uhlaka/isakhiwo • Abalingisi • Isendlalelo **Imibhalo yolwazi kanye neyenhlalo** • Izethameli nenhloso **Ukufunda okulungiselelwe nokungalungiselelwe (ukufunda kuzwakale)** • Ukusetshenziswa kwephimbo, kwezwi, ijubane, ukukhuluma kuzwakale, ukuqondana kwamehlo, ukuma kanye nokunyakaza komzimba • Ukuphimisa amagama ngendlela efanele

	Amakhono	Amabanga 4 – 6
Ukubhala nokwethula	• Ukubhala amagama, isib. uhla • Ukubhalwa kwemisho • Ukubhalwa kwesigaba **Izinhlobo zemibhalo** **Ukubhala abaziqambele kona** • Okuchazayo, isib. ukuchazwa kwabantu, kwezindawo, kwezilwane, kwezitshalo,, kwezinto, nokunye • Okulandayo, isib. izindaba, ukuxoxa ngobuyena/ ngaye • Izindaba ngezithombe • Inkulumo mpikiswano elula - **Ukubhala ngokuvumelana** (ngenhlalakahle, ngokusebenza, kanye umbhalo wolwazi) • Imiyalezo, amakhadi emiyalezo, izimemo • Amaphosta, izaziso, izikhangisi • Ukuqedelwa kohlaka olulula	**Inqubo yokubhala:** **Ukulungiselela ukubhala/ukuhlela** • Ukucabanga ngohlelomagama kanye nemiqondo eqenjini • Ukuhlelwa kwemiqondo **Ukwakha uhlaka** • Ukuqokwa kwegama • Ukwakha imisho • Imiqondo eyejwayelekile • Ukufunda lokho okubhalile • Ukuthola umbono/imizwa ngokubhalile kuthisha **Ukubukeza, ukufunda nokulungiswa kwamaphutha, nokwethula** • Ukubukeza: kwenza ngcono okuqukethwe nokuhleleka kwemiqondo • Kwenza ngcono ukuqokwa kwamagama, imisho nokwakheka kwezigaba • Kwethula umsebenzi wokugcina ngobunono nangendlela ebonakalayo

Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** (ukuthuthukiswa kolwazi magama): ukusetshenziswa kewsichazamazwi, isibizelo, ingcazelo, izakhi, imisindo, amagama asho okufanayo, aphikisayo, omqondofana, iziqalo, izijobelelo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** Izingcezu zenkulumo, isib. ibizo, isabizwana, izifingqo, amabizombaxa, izenzo, izihlanganiso Ukwakheka kwemisho: oqondile, ombaxa, imibuzo, izilandiso Izinkathi zesenzo isivumelwano:isivumelwano senhloko/sesenzo ukuhleleka kwamagama izindlela eziphikisayo inkulumo ngqo nenkulumo – mbiko **Ukubuthana/ukwakheka kolimi** Yethula imithetho elula yolimi Izimpawu zokuloba/zokubhala Isibizelo/isipelingi Imisindo *Bheka* **ohlwini lokubukela** - **izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
Izimpawu zokuloba	Ungqi, umbabazi, umbuzi, ukhefana, ikholoni, ukhefungqi, isibambelihlamvu, izicaphunimazwi, ikhongco, abakaki, ogaxekile
Isipelingi	Amaphethini esipelilingi, imithetho yesipelingi, izivumelwano, izifingqo, ukusetshenziswa kwesichazamazwi
Izingxenye zegama	Iziqalo, umsuka, isiqu, nezijobelelo

Amabizo	Amabizo abonakalayo *(isib. umuntu, isicathulo, njll)* Amabizo angabonakaliyo *(ukufa, umoya, inzondo, njll)* Amabizo anobunye nobuningi *(isib. umuntu/abantu, isihlalo/izihlalo, njll)* Amabizo angehlukanisi ubunye nobuningi *(isib. amanzi, ububi, ukudla, njll)* Amabizomvama *(isib. isihlahla, indlela, njll)* Amabizoqoqa (isib. *<u>igulo</u> lezinyosi, <u>umhlambi</u> wezinkomo, njll)* Amabizoqho *(isib. uSipho, iTheku, uZwane, njll)* Amabizombaxa *(igejambazo, imbuzimawa, njll)*
Izabizwana	Isabizwana soqobo *(isib. mina, wena, thina, yona, bona, yena, njll)* Isabizwana sokukhomba *(isib. lona, lowo, lowaya, njll)* Isabizwana sokubala *(isib. -nke, -dwa, -bili, thathu, njll)*
Izichasiso	Iziphawulo zonke (isib. *omuhle, okhulu, njll)* Isibaluli (*isib. oqatha, oqotho, njll)* Ongumnini (*isib. lami, kababa, wami, njll)* Inani *(isib. mumbe, muni, muphi, munye, njll)*
Izandiso	Isandiso sendawo *(isib. phandle, kuye, kude, njll)* Isandiso sesimo *(kahle, kabi, kanje, njll)* Isandiso senkathi *(isib.izolo, emini, ekuseni, njll)*
Izenzo	Eziqala ngonkamisa *(isib. elula, aba, akha, njll)* Eziphundulekile *(isib. azi, ithi, isho)* Ezinhlamvumbili *(isib. hamba, hleka, vuka, njll)* Ezinhlamvuntathu *(isib. khuluma, khululeka, xukuza, njll)*
Isenzo nenkathi	Inkathi yamanje *(isib. Ngifunda isiZulu)* Inkathi yamanje eqhubekayo *(isib. Ngisapheka ukudla)* Inkathi edlule *(isib. Ngafunda isiZulu)* Inkathi ezayo *(isib. Ngizofunda isiZulu)* **Izindlela zesenzo** *(isib. Eqondile, eyamandla, eyamile/encikile, esabizo, eyenhloso, ephoqayo*)
Isikhanyiso	**Isenzukuthi**: isib. *muhlu, phihli, saka* **Isandiso**: isib. *esenkathi, esesimo, esendawo,*
Isihlanganiso	Sihlanganisa okuthile okubekeke ngokwehlukana (*isib. ngoba, kodwa, ukuze, nakuba, futhi, njll)*
Isibabazo	Ukuveza imizwa *(isib. halala! maye! maye babo! njll)*
Izivumelwano	**Izivumelwno sikamenzi** isib. umfana <u>u</u>sefikile. **Isivumelwano sikamenziwa** isib. uthisha u<u>ba</u>fundisa isiZulu abafundi
Imisho	Mithathu: **Oqondile** ubonakala ngesilandiso esisodwa (*isib. Umfana <u>udlala</u> ibhola)* **Ombaxa** kuhlanganiswa imisho emibili eqondile (*isib. Ngiyasebebenza kodwa angiphumeleli)* **Omagatshagatsha** ubonakala ngomusho omkhulu/oyinhloko kanye nokhonzile/oncikile (isib. Isando sokuphihliza amatshe sephukile. Omkhulu: isando sephukile. Okhonzile: sokuphihliza amatshe.

Izimpambosi	**Eyokwenzana** ibonakala ngesakhi –ana **Eyokwenzeka** ibonakala ngesakhi –eka **Eyokwenzela** ibonakala ngesakhi –ela **Eyokwenzisa** ibonakala ngesakhi –isa **Eyokwenzisisa** ibonakala ngesakhi –isisa **Eyokwenzayenza** ibonakala ngokuphindwa kwesiqu sesenzo **Eyokwenziwa ibonakala ngesakhi u-wa**
Inkulumongqo nenkulumo ewumbiko	USenzo wathi, “Ngizokubona ngeSonto ekuseni” USenzo wathi uzongibona ngeSonto ekuseni. Umama wabuza, “Uwuthanda ngempela umculo wokholo” Umama wabuza ukuthi ngiyawuthanda yini umculo wokholo.

Izibonelo zezimo zokukhuluma ezitholakala esiZulwini

UKUCELA IMVUME Nginga....? Ngicela uku...? Ngabe kungenzeka ukuthi ngi...? Kungalunga uma nginga...? Ungaphatheka kabi uma ngi...? Ngicela ungivumele ngi...? Ungavuma ukuthi ngi...?	**UKUPHAZAMISA** Uxolo, nginga...? Ngiyaxolisa, ucabanga ukuthi nginga...? Uxolo, uyakwazi uku.../uyamazi u...? Uxolo, ungangisiza?
UKUNIKEZA USIZO Ngicela ukukusiza. Ngingakusiza? Kukhona okufunayo? Ungathanda ngikusize? Uyaludinga usizo? Ngingakwenzelani?	**UKUFUNA USIZO** Ngicela usizo e...? Ungangisiza uku...? Ngicela usizo nge...? Ngiyakucela, ngisize nge...? Ngicela ungisize.
UKUXOLISA Uxolo. Ngiyaxolisa ngoku... Ngiyazisola ngoku... Ungixolele ngoku... Ngixolele. Ngiyaxolisa.	**UKUKHONONDA** Ngiyaxolisa ukuthi ngikhulume kanje, kodwa... Ngiyaxolisa ukukuhlupha, kodwa... Mhlawumbe ulibele/ukhohliwe uku... Ungixolele uma ngiphaphalaza, kodwa... Kungenzeka ukuthi kube nokungaboni ngaso linye nge... Ungangizwa kabi, kodwa...
UKUNIKEZA ISELULEKO Angicabangi ukuthi kumele u... Kumele u... Akumele u... Ukube bengiwuwe, bengi... Bekumele u... Bekungamele u... Noma ngabe wenzani, ungalokothi u...	**UKUSHO INTO OYINCAMELAYO** Ungathanda uku... Ngingamane ngi... Kungani singa...? Ngincamela uku... Ucabangani? Ucabanga ukuthi kumele senzeni? Ukube bekuya ngami bengi... Ngicabanga ukuthi kumele si...

UKUQAGELA/UKUCABANGELA	**UKUNIKEZA ULWAZI ONEQINISO LWALO**
Ngingathi ukulungele uku...	Banga/bayi...
Kungadinga u...	Bacishe babe ...
Kubukeka sengathi ...	Kunenani elikhulu la...
Mhlawumbe udinga uku...	Uhlobo lwe...
Mhlawumbe bafuna uku...	Uhlobo olu...
Kunzima ukusho, kodwa ngicabanga ukuthi...	
Anginaqiniso kahle, kodwa ngicabanga ukuthi...	
UKUVALELISA	**UKUZIHLOLA/UKUZAHLULELA**
Uhambo olude, amaholidi, njll.	Lokhu kusebenze kahle ngoba...
Ube/nibe nohambo oluhle.	Ngikwenze kahle lokhu ngoba ...
Nibe namaholide amnandi.	Bekuyokuba ngcono uku...
Nibe nesikhathi esimnandi e...	Inqubekela phambili iyacaca/ayicaci.
UKUBINGELELANA NGEMUVA KOHAMBO/ KWAMAHOLIDE	Lokhu kuphumelela ngoba...
Abe njani amaholide...?	
Usithokozele isikhathi obe naso?	
Lube njani uhambo lwakho?	

3.2 UKUSABALALISWA KWEMIBHALO KUMABANGA 4 – 6

Imibhalo eminingi ikhethelwe umjikelezo wamasonto amabili. Imibhalo ebalulekile ibhalwe ngezansi. Abafundi bazozimbandakanya neminye noma nayo yonke imibhalo ngomjikelezo wamasonto amabili, okungukuthi, bazolalela noma bethule ngomlomo noma bafunde noma bahbale.

3.2.1 Ukusabalaliswa kombhalo kusetshenziswa ithebula

	Ibanga le – 4	Ibanga lesi – 5	Ibanga lesi – 6
Amasonto	**IThemu yoku -1**		
1 - 2	Indaba	Indaba	Indaba, imidlalo ngolimi/yolimi
3 - 4	Umbhalo wolwazi, isib. imibiko yezindaba/ukusho amaqiniso, ibalazwe	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amashadi/amathebula/ imifanekiso/amabalazwe egqondo/ amabalazwe/izithombe/amagrafu; ingxoxo; ukusho amaqiniso	Umbhalo wolwazi, isib. imibiko yezindaba/ukusho amaqiniso; izincwadi; ukusakaza, isib. Isikhangisi
5 - 6	indaba nokuchazwa kwabantu noma abalingiswa	Indaba, ukulingisa, ukuchazwa kwabantu, isimemo, umlayezo	Indaba
7 - 8	Umbhalo wolwazi: izinkambiso/ imiyalelo/izinhla	Umbhalo wolwazi: izinkambiso; imiyalelo; umdlalo wolimi	Ulwazimbhalo olunokubukwayo, isib, . amabalazwe/izithombe, izincazelo
9 - 10	Iculo, inkondlo	Iculo, inkondlo	Inkondlo, ukuchazwa komuntu ngeculo, ukuchazwa kwento/ kwesilwane/kwesitshalo/kwendawo nomdlalo wolimi
Amasonto	**IThemu ye- 2**		
11 - 12	Indaba	Indaba	Indaba nemiyalezo, ingxoxo
13 - 14	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. izithombe, amaphosta, izinkombandlela, ukuchazwa kwento	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amabalazwe/izithombe, ukuchazwa kwento/kwezitno/ izitshalo/izindawo/izilwane	Umbhalo wolwazi isib. ukuchazwa kwento/izilwane/izitshalo/izindawo, imibhalo ebukwayo isib. izithombe/ amabalazwe
15 - 16	Izindaba ngawe/ngokwake kwakwehlela	Izindaba ngawe/ngokwake kwamehlela (umfundi)	Indaba, izindaba ngaye/okwake kwamehlela (umfundi), ukulingisa
17- 18	Izinkambiso/inqubo, imiyalelo, umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe isib. izithombe/amabalazwe, / imifanekiso	Umbhalo wolwazi: imiyalelo, ukusho amaqiniso	Kufundwa umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib.amasheduli kamabonakude/amabalazwe/ izithombe, izincazelo nomdlalo wolimi
19 - 20	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**		
Amasonto	**IThemu ye- 3**		
21- 22	Indaba, ukuchazwa komuntu/ kwesilwane/umlingisi, inkulumompendulwano	Indaba, ukuchazwa kwezindawo ngomlomo/kwabantu, ukuxoxa ngaye/okwake kwamvelela	indaba;ukuchazwa kwezindawo ngomlomo/kwezilwane/ kwezitshalo/kwezinto
23 - 24	Umbhalo wolwazi, isib. ukusho amaqiniso kusetshenziswa umbhalo obonwayo nozwakalayo njengamaphosta/izaziso	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amabalazwe/izithombe	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amabalazwe/izithombe/ ukukhuluma
25 - 26	Indaba, inkondlo	Indaba, inkondlo	Indaba, inkondlo
27- 28	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. izithombe, ukuchazwa kwezindawo/izitshalo/izilwane/ izinto, izinkambiso	Umbhalo wolwazi: ingxoxo, umdlalo wolimi, ukuchazwa kwezindawo/izitshalo/izilwane/ izinto, izinkambiso	Umbhalo wolwazi – umdlalo wolimi, ibalzwe lomqondo elichaza izindawo/izitshalo/izilwane/izinto, izinkambiso
2 9 - 30	Ukulingisa, inkulumompendulwano	Ingxoxo, inkulompendulwano	Ingxoxo, inkulompendulwano

	Ibanga le – 4	Ibanga lesi – 5	Ibanga lesi – 6
Amasonto	**IThemu ye- 4**		
31- 32	Ingxoxo, umdlalo wolimi, indaba	Indaba, umdlalo wolimi, ingxoxo ngaye/okwake kwamehlela	Indaba, ingxoxo, inkulumompendulwano
33 - 34	Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. izithombe, umbhalo obonwayo, isib. amaphosta/ izaziso, imiyalezo	Umbhalo wolwazi:umbhalo oyiqiniso, amaphosta	Ukukhuluma ngombhalo wolwazi, umdlalo wolimi, izincazelo
35 - 36	Indaba, umdlalo wolimi	Indaba, inkondlo, ingxoxo ngaye/ okwake kwamehlela	Indaba, inkondlo
37 - 38	Ingxoxo, khuluma, umbhalo wolwazi, umbhalo obonwayo isib. amaphosta/isaziso	Umbhalo wolwazi, ingxoxo, amaphosta, umbhalo obonwayo, isib. ishadi	Umbhalo wolwazi kanye nephosta ebonwayo isikhangisi
39 - 40	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**		

3.2.2 Izinhlobo zombhalo ezifingqiwe kulona lonke izinga

Lamathebula angezansi achaza izinhlobo zemibhalo okufanele ifundiswe ukuyibhala emabangeni 4 – 6, neminye imibhalo ingafakwa lapho kufanele khona. Eminye yalemibhalo ayikho kulamathebula ezinhlelo zokufundisa. Lokho akusho ukuthi kufanele zingabi yingxenye yokufunda nokufundisa njengoba nazo zingezinye ezibalulekile.

Inhlobo yombhalo	Ukuhlelka kolimi okutholakala embhalweni ngamunye
Imilando yakhe	Ulimi olucahzayo, isiphawulo, isandiso Inkathi yesenzo, isib. inkathi eyedlule Ukuhleleka kwezigameko, isib. izandiso zesikhathi Amagama asitshela: kuphi, nini, nobani, kanjani Imisho elula Izihlanganiso, isib. kwase…, ngemuva, njll Inkulumo ngqo nenkulumombiko Amabizo nezabizwana
Imilando eyiqiniso	Iziphawulo, nemishwana ephawulayo Amabizo nezabizwana Izihlanganiso Inkathi yesenzo, isib. inkathi eyedlule(elula) Amabizo
Izindaba nemidlalo	Amagama ayizenzo, isib izenzo Izandiso ezichaza okwenzekayo Iziphawulo ezichaza abalingisi nesigcawu Imisho elula nelukhuni Izihlanganiso (zesikhathi) ukukhombisa ukulandelana kwezigameko, isib. kwase, emuva, njll Inkulumo ngqo nenkulumobiko Uhla lwezenzo olusenkathini ethile ikakhulukazi inkathi eyedlule Izimpawu zokubhala, isib. ikhoma, umbuzi, umbabazi

Izinkondlo	Izimo zenkulumo, isib. ukwenzasamuntu, isifaniso, isingathekiso, njll Anabizo Iziphawulo Izabizwana Imisho elula
Izinkambiso/imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela	Izenzo ezisekuqaleni komyalelo ngamunye ngokwejwayelekile Izenzo eziyimiyalelo Izandiso Amagama asho asitshela ukuthi: kanjani, nini, nobani Izihlanganiso ezikhombisa ukulandelana kwezitebhu, isib. kwase, njll Izenzo ezisenkathini, isib. inkathi yamanje elula Izinqumo
Izingxoxo	Izenzo Izabizwana Ukwakheka kwemisho, isib. imibuzo Izenzo zenkathi, isib. inkathi yamanje neyedlule elula
Imibhalo yolwazi	Amabizo Izenzo zenkathi, isib. inkathi yamanje elula Izenzo Iziphawulo Izinqumo Izabizwana Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama, isib. ulwazimagama lokuqhathanisa, ubudlelwano obushayisanayo Izimpawu zokubhala, isib. ikhoma/ukhefana
Izincazelo	Izenzo zenkathi, isib. inkathi yamanje elula Amabizo Iziphawulo Izinqumo
Okuchazayo	Izenzo zenkathi, isib. inkathi yamanje elula, inkathi edlule elula Amabizo Iziphawulo ezinikeza imininingwane izinqumo

Ibanga le - 4	Ibanga le – 5	Ibanga le – 6
ULWAZI		
• Xoxa uchaze ngawe/ngokwaziyo, isib.izindaba, ukuchazwa kwento ethile ngokweqiniso • Umbhalo wolwazi owejwayelekile • Imibhalo yemithombo yabezindaba njengezimemezelo emsakazweni • Imiyalelo efana nemithetho yomdlalo othile (ibhola lezinyawo), nezinkombandlela • Imibhalo ebukwayo: amabalazwe, izithombe	• Ukuxoxa/ukuchaza okungamaqiniso, isib. izindaba, ukuchazwa kwento ethile ngokweqiniso • Umbhalo wolwazi owejwayelekile • Imibhalo yolwazi • Imibhalo yemithombo yabezindaba njengezimemezelo emsakazweni • Imiyalelo efana nemithetho yomdlalo othile (ibhola lezinyawo), nezinkombandlela • Imibhalo ebukwayo: amabalazwe, izithombe	• Izincazelo ezifana nalezo ezitholakala ezincwadini, kuzichazamazwi, neminye imibhalo ethoalakala kwezinye izifundo • Izinto ezingamaqiniso ezifana nemibiko yezindaba (izihloko eziphambili ezindabeni, chaza izihloko ezihamba phambili, ukuphawula), ukubika kukafakazi ozibonele ngamehlo • Imibhalo yolwazi • Imibhalo yemithombo yabezindaba:izikhangisi, amaphosta, ama-athikili amaphephabhuku • Imiyalelo efana nemithetho yomdlalo othile (ibhola lezinyawo), nezinkombandlela • Imibhalo ebukwayo: amabalazwe, izithombe
OKUMAYELANA NEMIBHALO		
• Izingxoxo:izindaba zangempela eziqanjiwe, izinganekwane, izinsumansumane, izindaba ngezehlakalo, imicabango, izindaba zangempela. • Ukuxoxa ngaye/okwake kwamehlela okufana nezigameko ngokulandelana kwazo, nalokho okubhalwe kudayari • Inkondlo, umdlalo, ukulingisa	• Izingxoxo, isib. izindaba zangempela eziqanjiwe, insumansumane izindaba ngezehlakalo, imicabango, amahlaya, izindaba ezingamaqiniso, izindaba eziwumlando • Ukuxoxa ngaye/okwake kwamehlela njengezigameko ngokulandelana kwazo,, okubhalwe kudayari ukwenza izigcawu • Inkondlo, umdlalo, ukulingisa	• Izingxoxo, isib. izindaba zangempela eziqanjiwe, insumansumane izindaba ngezehlakalo, imicabango, amahlaya, izindaba ezingamaqiniso, izindaba eziwumlando, izindaba zesayensi, izinkondlo ezixoxwayo • Ukuxoxa ngaye/ngokwake kwamehlela njengokwenziwa kwezigcawu (ama-anekhdothi omlomo), ukuphawula ngokombono wakhe/ngokwakhe, okubhalwe kudayari, imilando ngabantu • Inkondlo, umdlalo, ukulingisa
OKUPHATHELENE NOMPHAKATHI/NOKUSEBENZA		
• Izingxoxo, isib. ukubuza, ukunikeza ulwazi ngomndeni • Imibhalo emifishane ngezenhlalakahle: amakhadi okufisela, amanothi, imiyalezo	• Izingxoxo: ukwenza izicelo, ukuchaza, ukunikeza ulwazi ngomphakathi • Imibhalo emifishane ngezenhlalkahle: izaziso, imiyalezo	• Izingxoxo: ukwenza izicelo, ukunikeza ulwazi ngomphakathi • Imibhalo emifishane ngomphakathi/ ngokusebenza:izaziso, imiyalezo

3.2.3 Ubude bemibhalo yoLimi lweSibili Lokwengeza (okuzokhiqizwa ngabafundi)

Umbhalo	iBanga le – 4	iBanga le – 5	iBanga le – 6
Isigaba			
Amagama	Amagama ayi 10 – 20	Amagama angama 20 - 30	Amagama angama 30 - 40 words
Imisho	Imisho emi 3 – 4	Imisho emi 4 – 6	Imisho eyi 6 – 8
Umbhalo wokuziqambela okhulunywayo, isib. imilando, ukuxoxa nokuxoxa uphindelele izindaba	Imizuzu e – 3	Imizuzu e - 3	Imizuzu emi 3-4
Imibhalo yolwazi neyokuziqaqambela, isib. imilando, izindaba, imibiko	Amagama angama – 20 isigaba esisodwa	Amagama angama – 30 isigaba esisodwa	Amagama angama – 40 izigaba ezi – 2
Imibiko emifishane, isb. **Imiyalezo, amanothi** **Izincazelo**	Amagama ayi – 10 kuya ema – 20	Amagama angama 20 – 30	Amagama angama 30 – 40

3.2.4 Ubude bemibhalo yoLimi lwaSekhaya (okufanele abafundi bazimbandakanye nako)

Umsebenzi	iBanga le – 4	iBanga le – 5	iBanga le – 6
Ukulalela ngokuqonda kwemibhalo okuthe xaxa, isib. indaba, ama-inthavyu, imidlalo, imibiko yezindaba	Amagama ayi 100-150/ kufinyelela emizuzwini emi – 5	Amagama ayi 150-200/ kufinyelela emizuzwini emi – 5	Amagama angama 200-250/ kufinyelela emizuzwini emi – 5
Ukulalela ngokuqonda imibhalo isikhathi esifishane, isib. izimemezelo, imibhalo yolwazi, imiyalelo, izinkombandlela	Amagama angama 50-60/ umzuzu o 1-2	Amagama angama - 60-70/ umzuzu o- 1-2	Amagama angama - 70-80/ umzuzu o- 1-2
Ukufunda **Imibhalo yokufunda ethe ukubanzima**	Amagama ayi - 100-150	Amagama ayi - 150-200	Amagama angama 200-250

3.2.5 Ulwazimagama olufanele ukuthi luzuzwe/lutholwe yilabobafundi okuwuLimi lwabo lwaSekhaya

	amaThemu	1	2	3	4
Ulwazimagama:	Grade 4	20 – 30	30 – 40	40 – 50	50 – 60
Amagama ajwayelekile akhulunywayo	Grade 5	60 – 710	70 – 80	80 – 90	90 – 100
	Grade 6	100 – 110	110 – 120	120 – 130	130 – 150
Ukufunda: ulwazimagama (amagama amasha)	Grade 4	30 – 50 (10 – 20)	30 – 50 (10 – 20)	30 – 50 (10 – 20)	30 – 50 (10 – 20)
	Grade 5	50 – 80	50 – 80	50 – 80	50 – 80
	Grade 6	80 – 100	80 – 100	80 – 100	80 – 100

3.3 IZINHLELO ZOKUFUNDISA

Uhlelo lokufundisa lukhombisa okuqukethwe okuncane okufanele kwenziwe ithemu ngayinye. Ukulandelana kokuqukethwe okusohlwini lomjikelezo wamasonto amabili, akumisiwe futhi isikhathi esinikeziwe siyilinginiso nje sokukhomba ukuthi into ezofundiswa ingathatha isikhathi eside kangakanani. Othisha kufanele bakhe amasheduli omsebenzi besebenzisa izincwadi zolimi ukufundisa okuqukethwe emjikelezweni wamasonto amabili besebenzisa ukulandelana okusheshayo. Okuqukethwe okunikeziwe emjikelezweni wamasonto amabili kuyimibhalo/ imisetshenzana ebalulekile enamakhono namaqhinga abalulekile abafundi okufanele ukuthi bawathuthukise njengoba echaziwe ngezansi.

3.3.1 Ixhunyaniswa kanjani imibhalo ndawonye, esikhathini somjikelezo wamasonto amabili

Imibhalo ehlukene isetshenzisiwe njengesisekelo sokukwakha umjikelezo wamasonto amabili. Ikhethwe ngendlela ehlangana ngayo ukwakha iyunithi embandakanyayo, isib. abafundi bazolalela indaba bese beyayifunda. Abafundi bazobuye bacelwe ukuthi babhale incazelo emfishane yendawo noma yomuntu (ezohlangana nendaba) noma bacelwe ukuthi babhale umbiko/umyalezo ngendaba . Kukhethwa indikimba yomjikelezo ngamunye wamasonto amabili ozovumela uthisha ukuthi ahlanganise imisebenzi ngempumelelo. Isizathu sokusebenzisa izindikimba wukwenza kube lula ukusebenzisa ulwazi magama oluwaphindaphindayo kanye nokwakheka kolimi kwingqikithi ezwakalayo. Ngokwenza, ukuhlanganisa kwenza amathuba: izindlela ezahlukene zemisebenzi, imibhalo, nezindikimba (bheka izindikimba eziphakanyisiwe – nanto uhla ngezansi)

3.3.2 Indlela imibhalo/imisebenzi ehlelwe ngayo kumjikelezo wamasonto amabili

Imibhalo akudingekile ukuthi ifundiswe ngendlela ethile. ngokwejwayelekile, kufanele kube nemisebenzi embandakanya ukulalela nokukhuluma ukulungiselela imisebenzi yokukufunda nokubhala. Ngesinye isikhathi, umsebenzi wokulalela nokukhuluma kufanele ususelwe embhalweni wokufunda. Abafundi kufanele bazihlanganise nemibhalo eyahlukene ekhulunywayo (yomlomo) neyokufunda ngaphambi kokuthi bayibhale lemibhalo. Esikhathini esiningi, umbhalo ozolalelwa, isib. indaba izokwehluka ibuye ibe sezingeni elithe xaxa kuleyo abafundi abazoyifunda. Lokhu kubangelwa ukuthi ikhono lokulalela selithuthuke kancono kunalelo lokufunda.

3.3.3 Uhlobo lwemibhalo enqunyiwe/emisiwe kanye nenconyiwe

Kunezinhlobo zemibhalo enquniwe/emisiwe okufanele ifundiswe kuyona yonke imijokelezo yamasonto amabili. Lokhu kubaluliwe ohlelweni lokufundisa futhi kufanele kufakwe encwadini enqunyiwe/emiselwe. Esikhathini esiningi, ayikho indaba eqonde ngqo emiselwe/enqunyiwe. Kungakhethwa ezindabeni ezahlukene zesimanje, izindaba ezicatshangwayo (isib. isigigaba, kanye nezindaba zendabuko, njengezinsumamnsumane, izinkolelo, imizekelo) etholakalayo. Lokhu kuyefana kuzinkondlo kanye namaculo.

Ngasosonke isikhathi, lokhu kufunda okwengeziwe kufanele kuhambisane nezihloko kanye nezindikimba ezikhethlwe lowombhalo onqunyiwe/omiselwe kumjikelezo wamasonto amabili. Lokhu kubaluleke kakhulu njengoba kuhlanganisa ulwazi lomfundi lolimi lwesibili lokwengeza kanye nokuqonda ulwazimagama nomqondo ohlobene nesihloko.

3.3.4 Inani lemibhalo ebalulekile emjikelezweni wamasonto amabili

Kungxenye yokuqala yonyaka, ngokwejwayelekile kuba nengxenye eyodwa yombhalo noma umsebenzi kumjikelelzo wamasonto amabili. Kungezneka kube nezinhlobo ezimbili zemibhalo/imisebenzi umjikelezo ngamunye wamasonto amabili. Zifundise lezinhlobo zemibhalo kanye nemisebenzi ehambisana nayo ube wazi ukuthi abafundi bazohlangabezana nayo futhi izikhathi eziningana ngokuqhubeka konyaka.

3.3.5 Kuhlangatshezwa kanjani ukwakheka nokusetshenziswa kolimi

Okuqukethwe engxenyeni “yokwakhiwa nokusetshenziswa kolimi” kususelwe kuzinhlobo zemibhalo enquniwe/emiselwe ngaphani kwezihloko zokuLalela nokuKhuluma, ukuFunda, kanye nokuBhala futhi kuzonakwa uma kuqhutshekwa nemibhalo nangesikhathi esibekelwe ukuLalela nokuKhuluma, ukuFunda nokubhala. Isib. uma indaba seyenziwe, abafundi bayosebenzisa inkathi eyedlule elula ukufunda imibhalo. Kodwa – ke, kubalulekile ukuthi imisebenzi egxile ekwakhekeni kolimi oluthile ithuthukiswe. Khetha izinto kwingxenye “yokwakheka nokusetshenziswa kolimi” uzinikeze abafundi ukuze bakwazi ukuzilolonga ngokuthe xaxa kulezozingxenye. Yakha imisebenzi ezwakalayo kubafundi nehlobene nemibhalo abayifundayo emjikelezweni wamasonto amabili. Eminingi imisebenzi yalolu hlobo kufanele yenziwe njengoba abafundi beqhubeka besuka eBangeni le-4 kuya kwe lesi - 6. Khetha ngokucophelela imithetho oyichazela abafundi ingabi mining. Ulimi lokwengeza lwesibili abafundi balufunda ngokuthi balubone futhi balusebenzise. Ukuzilolonga ngokwakheka nokusetshenziswa kolimi kuyowathuthukisa lamakhono. Ukufundisa kufanele kufake onke amakhono olimi nokwakhiwa kwalo njengokuhlobana kwako. Konke lokhu kufanele kufundiswe ngaphansi kwendikimba.

Izihloko eziphakanyisiwe – uhla okungathathelwa kulo	
• Izilwane	• Indlu
• Umzimba	• Okuthandwayo nokungathandwa
• Izimpahla	• Umculo
• Imibala	• Imvelo/inhlalo yendawo
• Izinsuku nezinyanga zonyaka	• Izindawo
• Imizwa	• Isikol e
• Umndeni	• Umdlalo
• Ukudla	• Isikhathi
• Ukubingelela	• Ezokuthtutha
• Izinto/imidlalo abathanda ukuyenza	• Isimo sezulu nezikhathi zonyaka

3.4 OKUQUKETHWE NAMASU OKUFUNDISA ULIMI LWESIBILI LOKWENGEZA LWESINGISI

IBANGA LE – 4 ULIMI LWESIBILI LOKWENGEZA – I- ENGLISH

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
1-2	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma:ingxoxo yezinga eliphansi ngolimi oluhlosiwe/ oluyithagethi (isib. ukubingelela)** • Ukuphendula imibuzo elula • Amagama abalingisi endabeni • Ukuhumusha uma kunesidingo **Ukuzejwayeza ukulalela nokukhuluma** • Gcizelela ukufundwa kwemisindo	**Ukufunda** • Funda amagama amayelana nengxoxo ebhaliwe • Phendula imibuzo ngombhalo esezingeni eliphansi • Veza imizwa ngombhalo • Xoxa ulwazimagama olusembhalweni ofundiwe • Pela amagama abe mahlanu ombhalo ofundiwe -	**Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala amagama ayisisekelo** • Bhala amagama ngendaba efundiwe	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama isib. amagama anemisindo efanayo/ ehambisanayo/indlela abukeka ngayo. • Usebenzisa ulwazi lwamagama awabona njalo **Ukusebenza ngamagama** Uqonda asebenzise amagama ngokwengqikithi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi**
3-4	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma nekhulunywayo kusetshenziswa ulimi oluhlosiwe/ oluyithagethi (isib. ukuxhomana ekilasini/ egunjini lokufundela)** • Phendula imibuzo • Kuxoxwa ngolwazimagama olusha • Ukuhumusha uma kunesidingo	**Ukufunda** Funda amagama aqondiswe engxoxweni	**Ukubhala** **Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala amagama ayisisekelo** • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama isib. amagama anemisindo efanayo/ ehambisanayo/indlela abukeka ngayo. • Usebenzisa ulwazi lwamagama awabona njalo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi**

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
5-6	**Lalela indaba** Khetha imibhalo yesimanje enobuqiniso/ izindaba zakudala/izehlo/ izindaba zangempela ezincwadini nakufayela kathisha yokufundisa • Phendula imibuzo elula • Yisho abalingiswa ngokufanele • Sebenzisa amagama ukukhombisa imizwa ngendaba • Humusha uma kunesidingo	**Ukufunda** Funda isiqeshana esithathelwe encwadini (yokufunda) noma kumqulu kathisha • Xuba uqondanise amagama ngendaba ngokusizwa • Khombisa imizwa ngendaba • Phendula imibuzo ngombhalo **Ukulungiselela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale wethule nomqondo wokuphimisa ngendlela nokukhombisa	**Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala ngendaba** • Bhala amagama noma iziqesgana ngendaba • Bhala indaba ngamagama akhouveze nemizwa ngendaba **Gcina amagama ngokuthi uwabhale phansi nezincazelo zakhona usebenzise isichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma amagama ukukhombisa izincazelo njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Hlakaza amagama ngokwamalunga, isib. –hle-ka, pha- ka- mi-sa • Amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakha imisho ekhombisa isihloko nesiyakhela ekusetshenzisweni kwesivulelwano senhloko nesenzo, isib. kunencwadi eyodwa/ Kunezincwadi ezimbili ... • Sebenzisa izinhlobo ezejwayelekile zesenzo, isib. hamba, uhambile/wahamba

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
7-8	**Lalela ubuye ulandele imiyalele imiyalelo eyisisekelo, isib. iresiphi/imiyalelo yokwenza okuthile** • Umbhalo othathelwe encawdini noma umqulu kathisha • Phendula imibuzo • Lalela wenze ngokufanele **Nikeza imiyalelo elula** • Sebenzisa imininingwane efanele • Sebenzisa indlela eyiyo yokulandelanisa **Uzejwayeza ukulalela nokukhuluma ukunothisa/ ukuthuthukisa ulimi** (khetha okukodwa ukuzilungiselela kwansuku zonke) • Yenza imilolozelo elula, inkondlo noma iculo • Phendula imiyalelo ngokuthi wenze • Dlala umdlalo wolimi • Gcizelela ukuzilungiselela kwemisindo	**Funda umbhalo oyinqubo sisekelo isib. iresiphi/imiyayokwenza okuthile** **Umbhalo othathelwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha** • Ingxoxo nokufunda okwandulelayo: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Phendula imibuzo ngombhalo • Xoxa ngokulandelana kwemiyalelo • Landela imiyalelo **Uzilungiselela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale ukwethula umqondo olungele indlela eyiyo yokuphimisa nokuziveza	**Yethula umbhalo** **Sebenzisa uhlaka ukubhala imiyalelo elula** • Landelanisa imiyalelo • Sebenzisa ukuhleleka okufanele (hlela kabusha ngendlela efanele) • Bhala imiyalelo/ amagama usebenzisa uhlaka • Lungisa isipelingi usebenzisa isichazamazwi **Gcina amagama ngokuthi uwabhale phansi nezincazelo zakhona usebenzise isichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma amagama ukuhombisa incazelo njl.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela kahle amagama ajwayelekile usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukuhlola/ukubheka isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama • Ukusebenza ngemisho • Sebenzisa indlela yokulayeza. • Sebenzisa ubuye uqonde indlela ephikisayo • Sebenzisa izinkathi (tenses) isib. ‘UPhila uhambile.’) • Yethula ukusebenza kobunye nobuningi ngendlela efanele **Ulwazimagama olutholaka kungqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni wokufunda ngokuhlanganyela nangayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
9-10	**Ukulalela ingoma/ inkondlo elula** Umbhalo othathelwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Xoxa ngomqondo ophakathi (central idea) • Hlanganisa nokwaziyo • Humusha uma kufanele • Khomba/bona amagama aqala ngomsindo ofanayo • Veza imizwa eqhuqhuzelwe/ ekhuthazwe umbhalo • Cula iculo/imigqa ekhethiwe **Dlala umdlalo wolimi** • Landela imiyalelo ngokufanele • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama **Uzejwayeza ukulalela nokukhuluma ukunothisa/ ukuthuthukisa ulimi** (khetha okukodwa ukuzilungiselela kwansuku zonke) • Shono umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Phendula imiyalelo ngokuthi wenze • Dlala umdlalo olula wolimi • Gcizelela ukuzilungiselela kwemisindo	**Funda i/izinkondlo ezilula** • Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Okwandulela ukufunda: qagela usebenzisa isihloko nezithombe • Sebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukuqagela, ukubuka ngokuqaphela izithombe, ukusetsheniziswa kwengqikithi • Phendula imibuzo ngombhalo • Bona isigqi nemvumelwano • Hlakaza amagama ngokwamalunga • Veza imizwa egqugquzelwa umbhalo **Funda uxazulule iphazili yamagama (ukuze uzithuthukise)** • Pela amagama ngokufanele • Khombisa ukuyiqonda incazelo yamagama **Uluzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise ngendlela, ngesigqi esifanele nangomumo wobuso oyiwo **Veza/khombisa umbhalo ofundiwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ngababili** • Khombisa/veza impendulo usebenzise imizwa (okuthandayo nongakuthandi) ngokombhalo ofundiwe.	**Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala imisho emi 2 – 3 ngenkondlo ekhethiwe usebenzisa uhlaka** • Bhala amabinzana/ imishwana elula **Sejwayeze ukubhala ukuze uziththukise** • Bhala amagama aqala ngomsindo ofanayo, isib. nambitha, nakekela **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/imishwana/ amagama usebenzisa amagama noma uchaze ukukhombisa izincazelo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Amagama ahambisanayo, isib. uqwembe nekhasi konke ukuthola “encwadini” **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa umbuzi • Sebenzisa umbabazi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe kumbhalo wokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
11-12	**Ukulalela indaba** Khetha imibhalo yesimanje enobuqiniso yokuziqambela/ yasendulo enezindaba zesintu/enezehlo eziyingozi/izindaba zangempela. Umbhalo osuselwa ezincwadini noma efayila lemithombo likathisha (TRF) • Qagela ukuthi yini elandelayo ezokwenzeka • Phendula imibuzo elula. • Phinda futhi uxoxe indaba ngokuyikho. • Yisho abalingiswa bendaba ngokufanele. • Ubona abalingiswa ngendlela abachazwa ngayo ngomlomo • Veza imibono yakhe ngendaba **Zilolongele ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Shono umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Phendula imiyalelo ngokuthi wenze • Dlala umdlalo olula wolimi • Gcizelela ukuzilungiselela kwemisindo	**Funda indaba** Umbhalo othathelwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukufunda okwandulelayo nokuxoxa: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Phendula imibuzo ngendaba • Bona indawo nomlingisi **Yenza umsebenzi wokuqonda wombhalo (ngomlomo)** • Xoxa ngolwazimagama lombhalo ofundiwe • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi **Zilolongele ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimisa, ukhombise ngobuso nangesivinini esifanele	**Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala umyalezo omfishane** • Khetha indikimba efanele • Yethula umbhalao kumuntu • Gcina ngegama lakho **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/imishwana usebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa incazelo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Funda ukupela amagama usebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo isib. Yakha amagama anemisindo ezwakala ngokufana. • Yakhela olwazini lwamagama ajwayelekile nalawo owabona/ owasebenzisa njalo • Sebenzisa ulwazi lokuhleleka ngokwama-alfabhethi ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi. • Izibonelo zobunye nobuningi • Sebenzisa amabizo obulili (isib. inkomazi/ inkunzi) **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakhela ekusetshenzisweni kwamabizo qho. **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela nangayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
13-14	**Lalela ulwazimbhalo isib**. izihloko ezilula njengexoxo oyenza usesitolo noma egaraji • Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Bona imininingwane ethile • Khuluma/ xoxa ngokwake kwakwehlela • Humusha uma kunesidingo **Lalela ubuye wenze elula landela imiyalelo/ izincazelo** • Khombisa ulwazimagama amayelana nengxoxo/ imiyalelo/incazelo **Lalela incazelo nokuchazwa kwento** • Bona into echazwe ngokufanele • Sebenzisa amagama achaza into ngokufanele • Sebenzisa amagama amasha • Sebenzisa isiphawulo **Zilolongele ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ozozilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Yenza umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Phendula ngokwenza ulandele imiyalelo • Dlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Gcizelela ukuzilolonga ngemisindo	**Funda ulwazi mbhalo olunezithombe isib**. izithombe/amabalazwe/ imidwebo/nezithombe • Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Okwandulela ukufunda: ukuqagela usebenzisa isihloko nezithombe • Buza uphendule imibuzo elula • Xoxa ngomqondo ovelele • Humusha ulwazi ngokwezithombe **Funda umbhalo obukwayo/obonwayo isib**. iphosta ekhangisa izehlakalo • Okwandulela ukufunda: xoxa usebenzise izithombe • Humusha ulwazi • Xoxa ngenhloso yombhalo • Xoxa ngolimi olusetshenzisiwe • Bona uchaze indlela izinto ezakheke ngayo njengemibala nezinhlobo zemibhalo	**Bhala ulwazimbhalo olwelekelelayo (usebenzise uhlaka)** • Qedla umbhalo ngegama elishodayo/ ufingqe umbhalo • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Sebenzisa amagama amasha athathelwe kumbhalo ofundiwe. • Yakha umbhalo obonwayo, isib. iphosta ekhangisa ngokwenzekayo • Yethula umbhalo • Khetha ulwazi olufanele • Sebenzisa izimo ezifanele • Sebenzisa isimo sokwenza esiyisisekelo esifana nombala, osayizi abhlukene noma izinhlobo zemibhalo **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo kusichazamazwi sakhe (umfundi)** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/imishwana usebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa incazelo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Yethula ubuningi • Amagama anonkamisa abanemisindo ezwakala imide: **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qonda usebenzise ongumnini (isib.amehlo kaNoluthando) • Bukeza amabizo • Yethula izinkathi (tenses) **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela nangayedwa • Amagama amqondofana (isib. umnyango/isicabha)

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
15-16	**Lalela indaba** Khetha kuzindaba ezindala/okwake kwakwehlela/enezehlo eziyingozi/izehlo eziyiqiniso • Umbhalo othathelwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Qagela ukuthi yini ezokwenzeka • Phendula imibuzo elula • Amagama abalingisi endabeni • Ukukwazi ukubona umlingisi ngokuthi achazwe ngomlomo **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Wenza/usho umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Ukuphendula/ ukulandela imiyalelo ngokwenza • Dlala umdalo wolimi olula • Gcizelela ukuzilolonga ngemisindo	**Funda indaba** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukufunda okwandulelayo kanye nokuxoxa: sebenzisa isihloko kanye nezithombe ukuqagela • Phendula imibuzo ngendaba • Ukwethula isimo nomlingisi **Wenza umsebenzi ngombhalo (ngomlomo)** • Xoxa ngolwazimagama olusha oluthathelwe embhalweni ofundiwe • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi **Ukuzilolngela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale usenzisa impimiso efanele nesivinini esifanele	**Bhala umyalezo/ amanothi omfishane** • Khetha okuqukethwe okufanele • Xoxela umuntu ngobhalo othile • Gcina ngegama lakho **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/ imishwana uchaze ukukhombisa incazelo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lokuhlela amagama ngokwama-alfabhethi ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi • Gcizelela ubunye nobuningi • Sebenzisa ubulili kumabizo athile (isib. inkomazi/inkunzi) **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Ukwakhiwa kwamabizoqho • Yethula izenzo • Sebenzisa izinhlobo ezahlukene zeziphawulo • Ukuqonda nokusebenzisa izinkathi • Ukukwazi ukusebenzisa izingasenzo **Ulwazimagama olutholakala kwingqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela nangayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
17-18	**Lalela wenze noma ulandele imiyalelo eyisisekelo, isib. iresiphi/imiyalelo yokwenza okuthile** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Xoxa ngemininingwane ethile yombhalo • Buza imibuzo ukuze uthole ulwazi • Lalela wenze ngendlela efanele **Nikeza imiyalelo** (okungenani ibe mibili) • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Yethula ukusebenza kwesenzo • Nikeza imiyalelo ngokulandelana kwayo **Zilolonge ngokulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha ongazilolonga ngakho njalo ngosuku) • Landela imiyalelo ngokuthi wenze • Nikeza ulandele imiyalelo elula/ izinkombandlela • Gcizelela ukufundwa kwemisindo	**Funda umbhalo wohlelo oluyisisekelo isib. iresiphi/imiyalelo yokwenza into ethile** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukwendlalela ukufunda ngokuthi uxoxe: sebenzisa izithombe nezihloko ukuqagela • Xoxa ngemininingwane ethile yombhallo • Xoxa ngokulandelana kwemiyalelo	**Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala ngohlelo ngokwelekelelayo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Qedela/faka imininingwane ohlakeni • Sebenzisa imininingwane ethile • Hlala esihlokweni esisohlakeni • Sebenzisa uhleo olufanele, isipelingi kanye nezimpawu zokuloba • Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho **Lebula ubye/noma uqedele umbhalo obukwayo, isib. umdwebo/izithombe/ amakhathuni/ amabalazwe/izithombe** • Lalela/ufunde ulwazi olufaka inininingwane ethile • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Bhala ilebuli endaweni efanele **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/ imishwana/amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa izincazelo njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** Amagama anomsindo wonkamisa abezwakala bedonsa/bebade: • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngendlela efanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho ubhlole nendlela okupelwa ngayo amagama nezincazelo zakhona • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwamagama ajwayelekile nasetshenziswa njalo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa umyalo wohlobo oluthile lwesenzo, isib. hamba, mana • Fundisa indlela yokubuza/ebuzayo **Ulwazimagama olutholakala kwingqikithi** • Amagama aphikisanayo, isib. kakhulu/kancane, asuselwe kumbhalo ofundiwe
19-20	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**			

IBANGA LESI – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
21-22	**Lalela umbhalo wolwazi isib. izihloko ezilula ezifana: "umndeni wami"** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma efayeleni kathisha • Bona imininingwane ethile • Xoxa ngokwaziyo • Humusha uma kunesidingo **Lalela wenze njengokwemiyalelo eshiwo ngomlomo/ echazayo** • Landela incazelo • Khombisa ukuqonda ulwazimagama ngokwencazelo **Zilolongele ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Shono umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Dlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Nikeza ubuye ulandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Shono izindaba zakho • Phinda uxoxe futhi indaba owake wasizwa noma wasifunda • Gcizelela ukuzilolonga ngemisindo	**Funda ulwazi lombhalo obonwayo isib.** izithombe/amabalazwe/ imidwebo Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kwifayela kathisha • Ukufunda kwangaphambili nengxoxo:sebenzisa isihloko, izithombe/ imifanekiso ukuqagela • Buza uphendule imibuzo elula • Xoxa ngomqondo ovelele • Humusha ulwazi olukwimifanekiso **Yenza ngokuqonda umsebenzi osembhalweni (ngomlomo)** • Funda umbhalo olula • Xoxa ngomqondo ovelele • Phendula imibuzo elula **Zilolonge ngokufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise ngendlela amagama, ukhombise izimpawu nesivinini	**Yethula umbhalo** **Lebula noma uqedele umbhalo wemifanekiso isib**. umdwebo/ izithombe/amabalazwe • Lalela/funda ulwazi olufaka imininingwane ethile • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Bhala amalebuli endaweni efanele **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/ amagama/imishwana ukukhombisa incazelo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. yakha amagama anemisindo efanayo • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwamagama asetshenziswa njalo najwayelekile • Sebenzisa izinhlobo zaamabizo ukwakha ubunye nobuningi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakha imisho usebenzise izabizwana zoqobo (isib. mina, wena, yona, bona, thina) • Yakha imisho usebenzise isabizwana sokukhomba (isb.lokhu lokho, lezi, lezo) **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Sebenzisa amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela nangayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
23-24	**Bamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni ezimfishane ngesihloko esejwayelekile** • Ukunikezana amthuba • Uhlala esihlokweni • Ubuza imibuzo eqondile **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze azithuthukise olimini** (ukhetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya/usho umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unikeza alandele imyalelo/ izinkombandlela ezilula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe • Uxoxa futhi indaba ayifundile noma ayizwile • Ugcizelela ukuzilolonga kusetshenziswa imisindo	**Ufunda ulwazimbhalo, isib. umbhalo omfishane/indaba/ inkondlo/iculo** • Umbhalo othathelwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukufunda okwandulelayo nengxoxo:sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Uphendula imibuzo elula, isib. Ini? Ubani? Nini? Yethula imibuzo ethe ukuqina njenggale: Kungani…..? Uthini owakho umbono……? **Wenza umsebenzi ngombhalo (ngomlomo)** **Zilolonge ngokufunda** • Funda kuzwakale ukuthuthukisa indlela yokuphimisa nokwenza	**Yethula umbhalo** **Bhala umbhalo omfishane** • Qedela umbhalo ngamagama afanele • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Sebenzisa amagama amasha otholakele embhalweni ofundiwe • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nencazelo yamagama **Gcina ngokubhala phansi izincazelo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho usebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Usebenzisa ulwazi lolukhleleka ngokwama-alfabhethi nezinhlamvu zokuqala egameni ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi • Ugcizelela amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Usebenzisa amabizo nobuningi, ubukeza amabizo afundiwe • Uqala ukusebenzisa amagama anqumayo njengokuthi: kunye, kubili, njll, nokuthi: owokuqala, owesibili, owokugcina, njll. **Ulwazimagama kwingqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe kumbhalo wokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
25-26	**Ulalela ulwazi olutholakala kumaphosta** • Ubona imininingwane ethile • Ulalela abuye alande ngolwazi analo • Uxoxa indaba ngamagama akhe • Uyahumusha **Ulalela inkondlo/iculo ukuze azithuthukise** • Uxoxa ngokuthi onkondlo imayelana nani • Ulanda ngaye uqobo • Ukwazi ukubona umlolozelo nesigqi • Ukwazi ukubona amagama aqala ngomsindo ofanayo • Ukhombisa imizwa evuswa yinkondlo • Uhaya inkondlo/imigqa ethile ekhethiwe • Uzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze azithuthuthukise • Uyazililonga esebenzisa amagama anemisindo efana neyawo isib.inyosi, inyoni, unyawo, njll. • Ugcizelela ukusetshenziswa kwemisindo	**Ufunda ulwazi olutholakala kumaphosta anemifanekiso** • Ukufunda okwandulelayo: uxoxa ngezithombe • Uxoxa ngomayelana nombhalo • Ukwazi ukubona ulwazi oluthile • Uthola aqonde ulwazi • Uxoxa ngenhlosos yombhalo • Uxoxa ngokusetshenziswa kolimi • Ubona axoxe ngezakhi eziyisisekelo ezifana nezinhlobo zosayizi noma izindlela ezahlukene zokubhala **Ufunda inkondlo/ izinkondlo/iculo ukuze azithuthukise** • Ukufunda okwandulelayo: usebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Usebenzisa amaqhinga okufunda ebe elekelelwa, isib. ukuqagela, ukubuka izithombe noma umbhalo ngokunakekela • Ubona umlolozelo nesigqi • Uhlakaza amagama ngokwamalunga • Ukhombisa imizwa evuselelwa inkondlo **Uzilolongela ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale esebenzisa impimiso efanele	**Wethula umbhalo** **Wakha akhiqize umbhalo onemifanekiso isib**. iphosta noma isaziso • Usebenzisa indlela eyiyo yokubhala • Ukhetha ulwazi olufanele/okuyilo • Usebenzisa izakhi eziyisisekelo ezifana nezinhlobo ezahlukene zokubhala/osayizi abehlukene **Ubhala imisho** • Ubhala imisho • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Usebenzisa ulwazi lwamalunga ukuthuthukisa amagama amasha **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Usebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho esebenzisa amagama ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Uqonda asebenzise amabizo anobuningi (isib.incwadi – izincwadi) • Usebenzisa iziphawulo ngaphambi kwamabizo isib.Inja encane. • Ukusebenzisa isenzo • Ukusebenzisa amagama athathwe embhlweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
27-28	**Ulalela umbhalo wolwazi isib**. ukukhuluma okungamaqiniso/ ukuchaza • Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noa kufayela kathisha **Ulalela ukuchazwa kwento abuye achaze izindawo/izitshalo/ izilwane/izinto** • Ukwazi ukubona izindawo ngendlela eyiyo • Usebenzisa amagama achyichaza kahle indawo • Usebenzisa amanye amagama amasha • Ukusebenzisa isiphawulo **Uzilolonga ngokulalela nokukhuluma ukuze azithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho) • Uhaya inkondlo, umlolozelo noma iculo elilula • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unikeza alandele imiyalelo nezinkombandlela ezilula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe • Uxoxa futhi indaba ayizwile noma ayifundile • Gcizelela ukufundwa kwemisindo	**Ufunda ulwazimbhalo olunemifanekiso isib**. amabalazwe/izithombe • Umbhalo othathwe encawdini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukufunda kwangaphambilini: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe/ imifanekiso ukuqagela • Sebenzisa amasu okufunda • Bona uphawule ngomqondo ovelele nemininingwane ethile ube welekelelwa • Humusha ulwazi olusembhalweni onemifanekiso	**Yethula umbhalo** **Lebula/qedela umbhalo onemifanekiso isib**. amabalazwe/ amakhathuni/izithombe/ imidwebo • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Lebula umbhalo ngendlela efanele • Sebenzisa umomo ofanele wokulebula, isib. igama elilodwa noma amabili nje kuphela **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho usebenzisa amagama noma uchaze ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isijobelelo u”wana” ukukhombisa izinciphiso • Qala ukusebenzisa isimo sesenzo • Qhubeka nokusebenza ngezenzo • Sebenzisa izihlanganiso (kodwa), isizathu (ngoba) kanye isizathu (ukuze). **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela nangayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
29-30	**Ulalela inkulumompikiswano ngesikhathi sokufunda kuzwakale, elalele umsakazo noma umabonakude** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha Ukwethulwa kokulingisa noma esimweni esejwayelekile • Khetha ingqikithi efanele ngokusizwa • Sebenzisa ngokuqaphela imininingwane • Hlala esihlokweni • Ukushintsha usuka kolunye ulimi uye kolunye ngendlela efanele **Ukuzilolonga ngokulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya umlolozelo noma inkodnlo elula • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo elula noma izinkomba • Uxoxa indaba yakhe • Uxoxa futhi indaba ayizwile noma ayifundile • Ugcizelela ukufundwa kwemisindo	**Ufunda inkulumompendulwano** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukufunda okwandulelayo: sebenzisa isihloko ukuqagela • Ukwazi ukubona imigqa yendaba • Xoxa ngabalingisi nesimo seshashalazi • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama oluyisisekelo ukuveza imizwa egqugquzelwe umbhalo • Uxoxa ngezimpawu zokuloba ezitholakala embhalweni nendlela okubhalwa ngayo **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise, wethule futhi usebenzisa isivinini esifanele	**Yethula umbhalo** **Ubhala inkulumompendulwano esebenzisa uhlaka noma inkulumo ngqo** • Khetha abalingisi abafanele • Hlela inkulumo ngokulandelana kwayo • Sebenzisa uhlakangendlela eyiyo • Sebenzisa inkulumo ngqo ngendlela efanele • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama • Sebenzisa uhlelo, isipelingi, izimpawu zokuloba nesivinini ngendlela efanele **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho usebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa izincazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagana ajwayelekile ngendlela, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho. • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho ukubheka isipelinginezincazelo zamagama **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa ukuqonda nezinkathi (tenses) • Sebenzisa izandiso zesikhathi (isib.kusasa, izolo) • Uqala ukubona inkulumombiko kanye nezimpawu zokuloba ezihambelana nayo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe kumbhalo ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
31-32	**Ubamba iqhaza engxoxweni ngesihloko esejwayelekile (isib. Isikole sami)** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ubuza imibuzo efanele abuye aphendule ngokufanele • Ugcina indaba • Uhlonipha imibono yabanye	**Ufunda umbhalo omfishane** Ukhetha izindaba zesimanje/zendabuko/ ezimayelana naye/ ezangempela • Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ngokwelekelelwa: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Uphendula imibuzo elula questions **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (ngomlomo)** Ubheka umbhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili • Umbhalo onemifanekiso ofundiwe	**Ubhala isahlukwana ngkosizwa** • Sebenzisa uhlaka ubuye uqedele ngamagama afanele • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olwejwayelekile • Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho ube usebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukuthola incazelo yamagama	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama uqale ngalezo zinhlamvu ezikhethiwe noma imisindo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** **Qala ukusebenzisa amagama anqumayo, afana nalwaw: kunye, kubili, njll; okokuqala, okwesibili, okokugcina.** **Sebenzisa izinkathi** **Sebenzisa izandiso** **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
33-34	**Ulalela izimemezelo ezilula** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Xoxa ngomqondo ovelele • Buza imibuzo • Uphendula ngendlela efanele **Ukuzilungiselela ukulalela nokukhuluma ngenhloso yokuzithuthukisa** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Haya umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo • Dla umdlalo olula wolimi • Nikeza ulandele imiyalelo elula • Xoxa indaba yakho • Xoxa futhi indaba owake wayizwa noma wayifunda	**Funda umbhalo wolwazi onemifanekiso, isib. amabalazwe/ izihtombe/amakhathuni** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukuzilungiselela ukufunda ngokulelkelelwa: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Phendula imibuzo elula **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo)** **Funda umbhalo onemifanekiso isib**. iphosta noma isaziso noma ipheshana Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: xoxa ngezithombe • Xoxa ngokumayelana nombhalo • Ubona ulwazi oluthile • Uhumusha ulwazi • Xoxa ngesizathu nabalaleli bombhalo • Xoxa ngokusebenza kolimi **Ukhuluma ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngamunye/ ngababili** • Xoxa futhi indaba noma umqondo ovelele ngemisho emibili noma emithathu • Khombisa imizwa nombhalo ofundiwe	**Bhala isigaba noma imisho emibili/ emithathu usebenzisa uhlaka** • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olwejwayelekile kufana izabizwana, iziqeshana • Sebenzisa uhlelo, isipelingi nezimpawu zokuloba ezifanele • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama **Dweba, lebula/ uqedele umbhalo onemifanekiso isib**. amabalazwe/izithombe/ amakhathuni • Ugcina ulwazi ngendlela efanele • Khombisa ukuxhumana phakathi kwemifanekiso • Bhala imisho echaza umfanekisombahlo • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheke isipelingi kanye nencazelo yawo **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa izihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukuhlangana nokulandelana (kwase…., ngaphambi ….) **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
35-36	**Lalela indaba emfishane eyinkulumompendu-lwano** Khetha kumbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Qagela ukuthi yini ezokwenzeka • Xoxa ngeshashalazi nabalingisi • Xoxa ngesehlakalo esigqamile endabeni • Shono indlela ozizwa ngayo ngendaba **Zilolongele ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthkise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Haya umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma ingxenye yendaba • Dlala umdlalo olula wolimi • Nikeza ubuye ulandele imiyalelo elula • Xoxa indaba yakho • Xoxa futhi indaba oyizwile noma oyifundile	**Funda indaba enenkulumompendu-lwano** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukuzilungiselela ukufunda ngokusizwa: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Xoxa ngeshashalazi nangabalingisi • Xoxa ngezehlakalo ezigqamile endabeni • Shono indlela ozizwa ngayo ngendaba • Bona ukuthi iyiphi ingxenye yendaba eyinkulumompendu-lwano • Lingisa indaba noma ingxenye yayo **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise amagama ngendlela efanele **Khuluma/cabanga ngombhalo ofundiwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa noma ngababili** • Kuxhumanise nempilo yakho lokho (okufundayo/ okufundile)	**Bhala indaba emfushane ngokusizwa: sebenzisa uhlaka ukugcwalisa ngamagama/imishwana engekho** • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama kanye nezabizwana, izihlanganiso nemishwana • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka ispelingi nencazelo yamagama **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho/ usebenzisa amagama ukukhombisa izincazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukuhlola isipelingi nezincazelo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa izixhumanisi • Thuthukisa ukusetshenziswa kwenkulumo ngqo • Yethula ukusetshenziswa kophawu lokucaphuna kwinkuluomo ngqo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LE – 4				
ITHEMU YE – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
37-38	**Ukubamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni ngesihloko esejwayelekile** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini nomakufayela kathisha • Buza imibuzo efanele uphendule nemibuzo • Ugcina indaba • Hlonipha imibono yabanye **Zilolongele ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Haya umlolozelo olula, inkondlo noma iculo noma ingxenye yendaba • Dlala umdlala wolimi olula • Nikeza ubuye ulandele imiyalelo elula • Xoxa izindaba zakho • Xoxa futhi indaba oyizwile noma oyifundile	**Funda umbhalo wesihloko esejwayelekile** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ngokwelekelelwa: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Phendula imibuzo elula bese uqala ukubuza imibuzo ethe ukuba lukhunyana, isib. Kungani……? Ubona kanjani? • Xoxa ngemifanekiso **Yenza umsebenzi ngombhalo wokuqonda (ngomlomo)** **Xoxa ngombhalo ofundiwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Khombisa imizwa uma uphendula umbhalo ofundiwe	**Bhala isigaba/imisho usebenzisa uhlaka** • Sebenzisa okuqukethwe okufanele • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olwejwayelekile kufaka nezabizwana, kanye nezihlanganiso nemishwana • Sebenzisa isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama **Gcina ngokubhala phansi izincazelo zamagama kusichazamazwi sakho** • Sebenzisa imidwebo noma imisho ukukhombisa izincazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela kahle amagama ajwayelekile usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Sebenzisa ulwazi lokuhleleka kwezinhlamvu ze-alfabhethi ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qala ukubona futhi usebenzise inkulumombiko • Yakha amagama ambaxa/angxube isib. mtholampilo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa
39-40	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**			

IBANGA LE – 5

IBANGA LESI 5				
ITHEMU 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
1-2	**Ulalela indaba emfushane** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) {umyalo uzophindwa njalo emuva kwamasonto amabili] • Uphendula imibuzo • Uqagela okuzokwenzeka **Ufunda futhi indaba** • Uxoxa futhi ngezigameko ngokulandelana ngemfanelo, esebenzisa inkathi edlule • Usho amagama abalingiswa ngemfanelo **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha anagzilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo emfushane noma imilolozelo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Uphendula futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela ezilula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe	**Ufunda indaba emfushane** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) [umyalo uzophindwa njalo emuva kwamasonto amabili] • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukucabangela phambili, usebenzisa amathiphu emisindo nawendikimba • Xoxa ngolwazimagama olusha oluthathwe embhalweni • Xoxa ngesihloko, nendawo lapho indaba yenzeka khona • Uveza umbono olula ngendaba • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi **WWenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Uxoxangombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Uxoxa futhi indaba noma ngemiqondo ebalulekile ngemisho emi-3 ukuya kwemi-3 • Ubeka umbono ngendaba	**Ubhala exoxa ngezigameko** **Ukhetha okuvela kokwenzeka** **Ukhetha okuqukethwe okufanele ekukhethela isihloko** **Uhlala esihlokweni** **Uhlaka olusetshenziswa abafundi abahlangabezana nobunzima** • Usebenzisa uhlelo lolimi, isipelingi kanye nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olumayelana nesihloko **Ubhala umbono osendabeni** • Ngaphambu kokubhala: uxoxisana ngokuthi bathandani/ abangayithandi • Ubhala imisho emi-2 ukwethula ukuthi bathandani/ abangayithandi **Wakha isichazamazwi akhe** • Ufakela amagama kumakhasi anezinhlamvu ze-alafabhethi • Ufaka amagama ama-5kanye nezincazelo (ukudweba/imisho esebenzisa igama/ incazelo yegama) • Noma uqhubeka nokufaka amagama kusichazamazwi esakhiwe eBangeni 4	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka upelomagama nencazelo yamagama • Yakha ngolwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama isib. Yakha iqoqo lamagama oluvela emndenini owodwa kunceke ekuthini liphinyiswa kanjani nokuthi libukeka kanjani. • Yakahausebenzinza amagama asebenza kaningi nabonakala kaningi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qonda usebenzise amabizo abalekayo (isib, incwadi – izincwadi) • Yakha usebenzisa amabizo qho, isib. anosonhlamvukazi/ ofeleba • Akha usebenzisa izabizwana zoqobo (isib. Mina, wena, kona, thina **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa

IBANGA LESI 5				
ITHEMU 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
3-4	**Ubamba iqhaza ezingxoweni ezimfushana ngesihloko esijwayelekile** • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzoelula ngesihloko • Ushintshashintsha ulimi uma kunesidingo • Nikeza abanye abafundi ithuba lokukhuluma • Ulalela abanye **Unikeza ingxoxo ngamaqiniso** • Uxoxa isigameko sakamuva • Uxoxa futhi ngezigameko ngokulandelana kwazo **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo emfushane noma imilolozelo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Uphendula futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela ezilula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe	**Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi onemifanekiso isib. amashadi/ amatafula/imidwebo/ umqondomdwebo/ amabalazwe/izithombe/ amakhathuni** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ufundaaphinde axoxisane ngesihloko aaphinde abuke imifanekiso/ izithombeni/ amabalazwe • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ufunda ekha phezulu efuna umqondo jikelele, usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo • Ubona amaphuzu abalulekile • Chaza okushiwo amagama angajwayelekile • Phendula imibuzo ngombhalo **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Wabelana ngemibono esembhalweni • Uhlobaniska umbhalo nempilo yakhe	**Ubhala ngenxoxo yamaqiniso** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe okufanele • Ubhala isihloko • Ulandelanisa izigameko ngemfanelo • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olufanele • Usebenzisa izinhlobonhlobo zohlu lamagama kumbandakanya amagama ayizihlanganisi nemishwana • Ulungisa amaphutha esipelingi esebenzisa isichazamazwi kanye nokudraftha futhi **Ukugcina amagama ngokuwabhala phansi kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Usebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. yakha amagama anemisindo efanayo. • Pela amgama ajwayelekile ngemfanelo usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Akha usebenzisa ukuqonda inkathi yamanje • Akha imisho ngokusebenzisa izindlela zesenzo, isib. ‘unga’ ukukhombisa ukukwazi, ‘ubunga’ ukukhombisa ukucela imvume • Sebenzisa isimo esijwayelekile sesenzo, uhamba, uhambile • Sebenzisa izandiso zesikhathi (isib. Kusasa, izolo) **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa

IBANGA LESI 5				
ITHEMU 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
5-6	**Lalela indaba enenkulumompendu-lwano** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqanjiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/ izindaba zezehlo/ amahlaya/izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo osencwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Usebenzisa izincazelo zomlomo ukuze aphawule abantu endabeni • Wethula imizwa nemibono ngendaba • Uphendula imibuzo omlomo ngendaba • Uphendula imibuzo omlomo ngendaba **Ulingisa ezinye izimo esijwayelekile** • Ubamba iqhaza kunkulumompendu-lwano kumbandakanya ulwazi olufanele • Usebenzisa inkathi efanele **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo emfushane noma imilolozelo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Uphendula futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela ezilula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe	**Ufunda indaba** Umbhalo ovela encwadini noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukucabangela phambili, usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola okushiwoyo, ufundelaukuthola imininingwane • Uphendula imibuzo ngendaba **Funda umbhalo omayelana nenhlalakahle isib. isimemo** • Xoxa ngenjongo yombhalo • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukuthola incazelo yamagama amasha **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimisa ngendlela, ufunda ngokushelela **Khuluma ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Sebenzisa amagama ukukhombisa imizwa yakho ngendaba efundiwe	**Ubhala incazelo elula/ amagama abantu** • Ubhala okungenani isigaba esisodwa • Uyaqamba abhale • Usebenzisa iziphawulo ngokufanele • Usebenzisa inkathi elula **Ubhala imiyalezo sho emifishane** • Uhlela ulwazi • Usebenzisa kahle isimo, isib. ukubingelela, usuku, njll • Wakha imisho ngendlela efanele **Bhala isigamu** • Chaza isigameko • Sebenzisa izihlanganiso • Bheka isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zakhona kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma lokho okushiwoyo ukukhombisa izincazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. yakha amagama anemisindo ethi ayifane • Pela amgama ajwayelekile ngokufanele usebenizise isichazamazwi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa amagama ayizihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukuhlangana (kanye …..) nokulandelana/ ukuhleleka (kwase…) • Sebenzisa osonhlamvukazi kumabizo ngqo, ezihlokweni nasemagameni abantu **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa • Amabizongxube

IBANGA LESI 5				
ITHEMU 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
7-8	**Ulalela alandele imiyalelo, isib. imiyalelo yokwenza into ethile** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ulandela imiyalelo ngendlela efanele • Ulandela indlela izinto ezilandelana ngayo ngokufanele **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Haya inkondlo noma umlolozelo/iculo • Xoxa indaba yakho	**Funda umbhalo wenkambiso** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukuqagela • Xoxa ngemininingwane ethile yombhalo • Xoxa ngokulandelana kwemiyalelo • Yenza ngokwemiyalelo (uma kwenzeka) **Yenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma obhalwayo)** **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kakhulu uphimise amagama ngendlela efanele, ufunde ngokushelela. **Cabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Nikeza ngomlomo indlela ohlaziye ngayo umbhalo • Faka amaphuzu asemqoka isib. isihloko. • Nikeza umbono wakho ngombhalo	**Sebenzisa uhlaka ukubhala imiyalelo** • Sebenzisa imininingwane eyiyo. • Sebenzisa indlela yokulandelana efanele, usebenzisa izihlanganiso, isib. okokuqala, okulandelayo, njll • Sebenzisa inkathi elula • Sebenzisa uhlaka olufanele **Gcina ngokubhala phansi izincazelo zamagama kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okushiwoyo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. amagama ezwakala noma anemisindo ethi ayifane • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukupela amagama nokuthola izincazelo zawo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Ukuqonda nokusebenzisa ongumnini, isib. amehlo kaNonhlanhla • Qala ukusebenzisa amagama anqumayo afana nalawa: kunye, kubili, njll okokuqala, okwesibili, okokugcina, • Qala uksebenzisa ongumnini kuzabizwana • Sebenzisa ngokuqonda izibaluli esiphikisayo • Sebenzisa isimo sesenzo ‘sokuba’ isib. iba • Qonda ukusebenzisa inkathi yamanje eqhubekayo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI 5				
ITHEMU 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
9-10	**Ukulalela inkondlo/ iculo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Khuluma ngenkondlo/ iculo (ikhuluma ngani inkondlo) • Ukhuluma ngakwaziyo noma izinto adlule kuzo • Ukwazi ukubona umlolozelo nezigqi • Unikeza izimpendulo zakhe (thanda/ awuyithandi inkondlo) **Uhaya inkondlo ukuzithuthikisa** • Uphimisa amgama ngendlela efanele • Ukhombisa ukuqonda • Wenza isigqi	**Funda inkondlo/iculo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Xoxa ngesihloko kanye nomqondo ovelele enkondlweni • Xoxa ngomlolozelo • Xoxa ngamagama aqala ngomsindo ofanayo • Xoxa amagama anemisindo ecishe ifane • Xoxa ngezifaniso isib. “ ucua njengenyoni.”, “uyisilomo” • Uphendula imibuzo ngenkondlo/ ngezinkondlo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala) **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale ukhombise nokukuqonda okufundwayo • Phimisa ngendlela efanele, imishwana nesivinini ofunda ngaso **Xoxa/khuluma ngombhalo ofundiwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ngababili** • Qhathanisa isi. izindaba/imibhalo/ izinkondlo/amaculo okufundiwe	**Bhala isahlukwana ngenkondlo/izinkondlo** • Xoxa ngokuthi isahlukwana simayelana nani **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelozawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma lokho okuchazayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. akha amagama anemisindo efanayo noma abukeka efana • Pela amgama ajwayelekile ngendlela efanele usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa ubulili baamanye amabizo (isib. inkomazi/inkunzi) • Sebenzisa izinhlobo ezahlukene zesiphawulo kufaka izinto okwenziwe ngazo izinto, isib. ijezi elenziwe ngewuli **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
11-12 ?.	**Lalela indaba** (khetha ezindabeni eziyizinganekwane/ ezingelona iqiniso/ izindaba zakudala/ nkokwake kwakwehlela) • Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Phendula imibuzo • Phendula imibuzo elula **Bamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni zesihloko esejwayelekile, uhumushe uma kunesidingo** • Buza uphendule imibuzo • Hlonipha abanye abafundi ngokuthi ubalalela	**Funda indaba** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ngokusizwa ubuye oxoxe ngesihloko ubheke nezithombe • Sebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukuqagela/ ukucabangela phambili usebenzisa indikimba • Xoxa ngolwazimagama amasha • Bona ukulandelana kwezigameko, ishashalazi nabalingisi • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi **Yenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma okubhalwayo)** **Zilolongele ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise amagama ngendlela efanele, ufunde ngokushelela ukhombise nangokwenza **Xoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Xoxa ngendaba emfishane	**Sebenzisa uhlaka ukubhala isigaba esilula** • Bhala umusho wokuvula ofanele • Bhala ngezigameko nangokulandelana kwazo • Sebenzisa izihlanganiso (kodwa, ngoba) • Sebenzisa ezinye zeziphawulo, ubhale isiphetho esifanele **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama noma lokho okuchazwayo ukuhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Sebenzisa ulwazi lokulandela konobumba ngendlela efanele sebenzisa izinhlamvu zokuqala zamagama ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi. **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa amabizo nobuningi, isibonelo: amabhulukwe, izihlalo • Qala wakhe iziphawulo ngaphambi kwamabizo, isib. encane inja **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayaedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
13 – 14	**Ukulalela umbhalo wolwazi, isib**. ngomlomo Izincazelo/zezinto/ izitshalao/izilwane/ izindawo Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ubona izinto • Uchza ukuthi zisetshenziswa kuphi/-lani • Ukudweba nokulebula **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ongakwenza nsukuzonke) • Haya umlolozelo noma inkondlo emfishane • Dlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Nikeza ubuye ulandele imiyalelo elula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe • Uxoxa ngadlule kukho empilweni	**Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi onemifanekiso, isib.** amashadi/ amatafula/imifanekiso/ imiqondomdwebo/ izithombe/amakhathuni Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa izithombe/imifanekiso kanye nesihloko ukuqagela • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda • Ufunda ngoba efuna ulwazi oluthile, isib. isheduli • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo nangemifanekiso **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa amagama/ izinhlamvu ngokufanele, efunda ngokugeleza **Uxoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Uxoxa futhi ngombhalo ofundiwe	**Uchaza into ethile/ izitshalo/izilwane/ izindawo kafishane esebenzisa uhlaka (ngemisho e 3 – 4)** • Usebenzisa uhlaka ngendlela • Ufaka imininingwane ethile • Uthatha izinqumo ezifanele • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Izimpawu zokubhala ezilungele **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi izincazelo zamagama kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma lokho okuchazwayo ukukhombiza izincazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Sebenzisa ulwazi lokulandela konobumba ngendlela efanele sebenzisa izinhlamvu zokuqala zamagama ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi. **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakha usebenzise amabizo qho, isib. ngosonhlamvukazi • Yakha ngokuqonda usebenzise inkathi ezayo • Inkathi yamanje echaza ukwenza okujwayelekile, isib. ‘Ngixubha amazinyo ami zonke izinsuku’ • Sebenzisa isimo sesenzo ‘sokuba’ –ba/-be/baya…/ngi/si../ube/ bebe **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
15-16	**Ubamba iqhaza engxoxweni yesihloko esejwayelekile, isib. (isikole sami)** • Ubuza aphendule imibuzo elula ngeshloko • Uyahumusha uma kunesidingo • Unikeza abanye abafundi ithuba lokukhuluma • Ulalela abanye **Unikeza incazelo ngokwenzekayo** • Ukhuluma ngezigameko • Uxoxa ngezigameko ngokulandelana kwazo **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo emfushane noma imilolozelo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Uxoxa ngezindaba zakhe • Uxoxa ngomdwebo noma ithebula lendaba	**Ufunda indaba** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda:sebenzisa izithombe nesihloko ukuqagela • Funda ukuthola imiiningwane nolwazi • Ubona aphawule ngomyalezo • Uqonda ulwazimagama • Uphendula imibuzo ngendaba • Uxoxa indaba ngawakhe amazwi/ amagama (ngomlomo noma ngokuyibhala) **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** **Ukuzilungisela ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa amagama ngendlela, efunda ngokushelela	**Ukubhalwa kwesahlukwana kusetshenziswa uhlaka** • Bhala okungenani izahlukwana ezimbili usebenzisa uhlaka • Xhuma izahlukwana ussebenzisa izihlanganiso • Sebenzisa ulwazimagama olusha kanye nezimpawu zokubhala ezifundiwe • Sebenzisa uhlu lwamagama, isipelingi, izimpawu zokubhala ushiye nezikhala phakathi kwezahlukwana • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nencazelo yamagama **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Hlukanisa igama elide libe amalunga amancane isib. Impica-ba-dala **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa izibaluli ezichaza okuhambisana nobudala babantu isib. Umntwana, insizwa, umkhulu • Qonda bese usebenzisa izenzo ezichaza umnyakazo **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
17-18	**Ulalela futhi aphendule imiyalelo yomlomo** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) Ulandela imiyalelo • Ukhombisa ukuqonda amagama ayimiyalelo **Ulingisa ezinye izimo esijwayelekile, isib unika imiyalelo** • Unikeza izinkombandela/ imiyalelo okungenani emi-3 ngokulandelana okufanele • Usebenzisa ulimi olufanele/ uhlu lwamagama kanyenokunyakaza komzimba, isib. amagama ayizinkomba, izenzo eziyimiyalelo **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo emfushane noma imilolozelo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Uphendula futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela ezilula	Ufunda umbhalo wenkambiso, isib. iresiphi/imiyalelo yokwenza okuthile Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo • Ulandela imiyalelo ngokufanele **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Uxoxa ngombhalo ofundiwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Uqhathanisa imibhalo ofundiwe	**Ubhala iresiphi noma imiyalelo yokwenza okuthile esebenzisa uhlaka** • Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amashadi/ amathebula/ imifanekiso/ amabalazwe egqondo/ amabalazwe/izithombe • Usebenzisa amafremu ngendlela • Kumbandakanya uhlu lwezinothisi • Kumbandakanya indlela ngokulandelana okufanele • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olufanele **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Usebenzis amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa izandiso zendawo (lapha, lapho) • Qala ukusebenzisa izandiso ezikhulisayo isib. 'Kakhulu, ngempela, cisha, futhi' • Inkathi ezayo (isib. 'Ngizombona kusasa') • Qala ukusebenzisa izihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukuphikisana (kodwa), isizathu (ngoba) nesizathu (ukuze). • Usebenzisa umbabazi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa
19-20	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**			

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
21-22	**Ukulalela ukuchazwa ngomlomo kwezindawo/abantu** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ubona izindawo/ abantu • Uqaphela ulwazi okuyilo ezindabeni **Ulalela futhi anike umbiko wakhe** • Ukhumbula okwenzeka, aphendule imibuzo ngokulandelana kwezigameko . **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma (khetha ongakwenza nsukuzonke** • Uhaya inkondlo emfishane noma umlolozelo noma iculo noma ingxenye yendaba emfishane • Udlala umdlao wolimi omfishane • Unikeza alandele imiyalelo • Uxoxa ngezindaba zakhe	**Ufunda indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando. Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Uqonda kahle izakhi zombhalo • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo, uyabekisela • Uphendula imibuzo ngendaba • Ubona abalingisi **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Ufunda isigaba esifishane** • Uxoxa ngokujulile ngomqondo evele kanye nemininingwane **Uxoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi kufundwa ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Kuxoxwa ngombhalo ofindiwe	**Ubhala isigaba/ isahlukwana ngawakhe amagama esebenzisa uhlaka** • Usebenzisa inkathi edlule eqondile • Uphawula izigameko ezibalulekile • Uxoxa ngezigameko ngendlela efanele • Usebenzisa uhlelo lolimi, isipelingi, izimpawu zokubhala ekanye nezikhala phakathi kweziba ngokufanele **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Sebenzisa amagama aqala ngezimhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qonda ukusebenza kwamabizo abalekayo (isib. Incwadi/ izincwadi) • Yakha usebenzisa izabizwana zoqobo (isib. Mina, wena, kona, thina, bona) • Yakha ukhombise ukuqonda imisebenzi yezibaluli eziveza ukuphikisa • Akha usebenzisa isivumelwano senhloko eyisenzo isib. Igundane liyabaleka/ amagundane ayabaleka • Sebenzisa umbuzi nombabazi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
23-24	**Ukhuluma ngesihloko esejwayelekile ukuzilungiselela** • Uhlela aphinde alungise amaphuzu abalulekile • Usho imisho emi-5 ngesihloko • Uphendula imibuzo **Ukuzilungiselela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho) • Uhaya inkondlo emfishane noma ingxenye yendaba • Dlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Nikeza ubuye ulandele imiyalelo elula • Xoxa ngezindaba zakhe	**Ufunda umbhalo onemifanekiso, isib. amashadi/amatafula/ umqondomdwebo/ amabalazwe/izithombe/ amagrafu/imidwebo/ amakhathuni** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: gxila kumininingwane ebalulekile • Xoxa ngolwazi olugqamile olunikeziwe-khetha imininingwane eqondile ukuphendula imibuzo **Wenza umsebenzo ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma obhalwayo)** **Ukuzilungiselela ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela **Ukhuluma ngombhalo ofundiwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Uxoxa futhi ngombhalo ngemisho emi – 3	**Dweba/qedla ulebule umbhalo olula onezithombe isib. amashadi/ amatafula/imidwebo/ umqondomdwebo/ amakhathuni** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Usebenzisa ulwazi oluthathwe embhalweni obhaliwe noma onemidwebo • Uhlela ulwazi • Unikeza ulwazi **Wenza umqondomdwebo ofingqiwe wombhalo omfishane** • Ubona okungenani amaphuzu abalulekile amathathu **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa izincazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama • Amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Uqonda asebenzise amabizo • Uqala ukusebenzisa izabizwana nezinhlobo ezahlukene zeziphawulo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela/ ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
25-26	**Ulalela izindaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uqonda izindaba, uphendula imibuzo • Uveza umbono wakhe **Uxoxa futhi indaba** • Khuluma ngabalingiswa abagqamile • Xoxa futhi indaba ngawakho amagama • Sebenzisa izinkathi ezethuliwe kumabanga edlulile	**Ukufunda indaba** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Xoxa ngabalingiswa • Uphendula imibuzo emayelana nendaba • Ubona umyalezo ogqamile endabeni **Wenza umsebenzi wolwazi ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** **Ufunda inkondlo/ izinkondlo/i/amaculo** • Xoxa ngesihloko nangomqondo ogqamile **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale, uphimise ngendlela, ufunde ngokushelela **Xoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Uhlobanisa umbhalo nempilo yakho	**Bhala indaba elula usebenzise uhlaka.** - Bhala indaba • Indaba inesiqalo, indikimba kanye nesiphetho **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zakhona kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngendlela efanele usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Uchaza imisho elula ngokwesihloko, isenzo, nento • Uqala ukusebenzisa izihlangansio (uma, kwase) • Uthuthukisa ukusetshenziswa kwenkulumo ngqo. • Uqala ukubona asebenzise inkulumombiko. **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela/ ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
27-28	**Ubamba iqhaza engxoxweni yesihloko esejwayelekile (isib. isimo sezulu)** • Ubuza aphendule imibuzo • Uhlonipha abanye abafundi ngokuthi abalalele • Uyahumusha uma kunesidingo **Ukuzilungiselela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo noma umlolozelo omfishane noma ingxenye yendaba • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo elula • Uxoxa izindaba zakhe	**Ufunda umbhalo wenqubo/inkambiso isib**. umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Uthola imininingwane ethile • Uhumusha imidwebo • Uxoxa ngokulandelana kwezigameko **Ukuzilungiselela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise ngendlela efanele, ufunde ngokushelela **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)**	**Bhala ngombhalo wolwazi oke wasetshenziswa** • Bhala izigaba ezifinyelela kwezimbili • Hlela ulwazi ngokulandelana kwalo • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nencazelo yamagama • Sebenzisa uhleo lokubhala ngokusizwa **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amgama ajwayelekile ngendlela efanele esebnzisa isichazamazwi sakhe • Amagama aqala ngezinhlamvu ezikhethiwe • Ukusebenza ngemisho • Uthuthukisa ukuqonda nokusebenzisa izihlanganiso • Uqonda abuye asebenzise inkulumombiko • Uqonda abuye asebenzise indlela ephikisayo/yokuphikisa **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi soukufunda ngokuhlanganyela/ ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
29-30	**Ubamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni ngesihloko esejwayelekile** • Buza uphendule imibuzo • Hlonipha abanye abafundi ngokuthi ubalalele • Humusha uma kunesidingo • Buza ubuye uphendule imibuzo ethe ukubanzima isib. ubungathini…? **Ulingisa indima elula** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Thuthukisa imigqa yendaba ebucayi • Uphimisa amagama kuzwakale nangendlela efanele **Ukuzilungiselela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Haya inkondlo emfishane noma umlolozelo noma iculo noma ingxenye yendaba • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Xoxa ngendaba yakho	**Funda umbhalo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa isihloko ukuqagela • Sebenzisa amasu okufunda ngokusizwa • Bona imigqa yendaba • Xoxa ngabalingisi, ishashalazi **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngendaba (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** **Ukuzilungiselea ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale ukhombise nokuwuqonda umbhalo • Funda kuzwakale uphimsa ngendlela efanele, nangesivinini esifanele **Khuluma/cabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngokuzimela** • Qhathanisa umbhalo ofundiwe	**Bhala inkulumompendulwano usebenzisa uhlaka** • Khetha abalingisi abafanele • Hlela inkulumompendulwano ngukulandelana kwayo • Sebenzisa inkulumo ngqo • Sebenzisa indlela yokubhala engahlelekile • Sebenzisa izimpawu zokubhala ezifanele, isib. ikhoma, umbabazi, umbuzi • Sebenzisa inqubo yokubhala **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama • Gcizelela ubuningi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa amabizo awubulili (isib. inkomazi/inkunzi) • Bukeza amabizo • Sebenzisa amabizo ajwayelekile • Zejwayeze ukusebenzisa izinkathi • Bukeza ukusetshenziswa kwezihlanganiso **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi soukufunda ngokuhlanganyela/ ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
31-32	**Ulalela indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uqonda izindaba • Uphendula imibuzo esobala • Ubuza imibuzo efanele futhi aphendule imibuzo • Uyaphendula bese eqala ukubuza eminye yemibuzo enzinyana, isib. Kungani?, Yini ... ? Ucabangani ... ?	**Funda indaba noma inkondlo noma iculo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa izithombe nesihloko ukuqagela • Sebenzisa amasu okufunda ukuthola incazelo • Xoxa ngomqondo ovelele neminye imininingwane • Bona indlela okulandelana ngayo izigameko • Khomba ishashalazi nabalingisi • Phendula imibuzo elula bese uqala ukubuza imibuzo elukhuni, isib. kungani…? **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** • Ukuzilolongela ukufunda • Funda kuzwakale uphimisa amagama ngendlela, ufunda ngokushelela. **Xoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Xoxa ngobhalo ofundiwe	**Ubhala ngezigameko zakhe** • Uhlobanisa izigameko **Ubhala indaba elula/ isigaba/imishwana nghlaka** • Sebenzisa isimo sendaba • Uhlanganisa imisho ukuze yenze isigaba esebenzisa izabizwana, izihlanganiso nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele • Sebenzisa inkathi efanele ukubheke isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama • Sebenzisa inqubo yokubhala **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngendlela usebenzise isichazamazwi sakho • Amagama agcina ngohlamvu olukhethiwe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Ukuqonda nokusebenzisa amabizo • Ukusetshenziswa kezabizwana • Ukusetshenziswa kweziphawulo • Ukusetshenziswa kwezivumelwano **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
33-34	**Ubamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni** • Uxoxa nezihloko ezejwayelekile • Ukunikezana amathuba, ukukhombisa inhlonipho kwabanye, ukuhlonipha imibono yabanye **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (Khetha nokukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo emfishane noma umlolozelo noma iculo • Udlala umdlalo olula wolimi • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo elula • Uxoxa ngezindaba zakhe	**Funda umbhalo** - Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: ukuqagela ukuthi indaba imayelana nani • Uphendula imibuzo • Uxoxa ngomqondo ovelele nemininingwane ethile **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqonda ngombhalo (ngomlomo noma ngokubhala)** **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Ufunda kakhulu ephimisa ngendlela efanele, efunda ngokushelela **Funda uqonde iphosta** • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa izithombe nesihloko ukuqagela • Humusha ulwazi • Xoxa ngombhalo	**Bhala ulwazimbhalo usebenzisa uhlaka** • Khetha isihloko esifanele • Faka ulwazi olufanele • Sebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa/ ngokulekelelwa **Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama** **Yenza/akha iphosta** • Faka ulwazi olufanele • Faka isithombe • Sebenzisa isikali esifanele sokubhala • Wethula umbhalo wokuqala onobunono nobonakalayo **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi kanye nezincazelo zamagama **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Usebenzisa amabizo ukukwazi ukusebenzisa izabizwana • Sebenzisa iziphawulo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
35-36	**Ulalela indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma i(zi)ncwadi zokufunda noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uphendula imibuzo **Uxoxa indaba efanayo ngamagama akhe ebe elekelelwa** • Ukuhlelka kwendaba okwakha umqondo • Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma • (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo noma umlolozelo omfishane noma iculo • Udlala umdlalo olula wolimi • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo elula • Uxoxa ngezindaba zakhe • Ukhumbula izigameko ngokulandelana kwazo	**Funda indaba** Umbhalo othathelwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa izithombe noma isihloko ukuqagela • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukuthola incazelo yamagama amasha • Uxoxa ngomqondo ovelele neminye imininingwane • Ubona indlela okuhleleke ngayo izigameko • Ukwazi ukubona phakathi kwabalingisi neshashalazi • Uphendula abuye aqale ukubuza eminye yemibuzo elukhuni **Ufunda izinkondlo** • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa isihloko nezithombe ukuqagela • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda • Uphendula imibuzo ngenkondlo • Uveza imizwa egqugquzelwe inkondlo • Uxoxa ngomlolozelo, amagama aqala ngomsindo ofanayo nangokuqhathanisa **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimisa ngendlela, ufunda ngokushelela	**Bhala ngezigameko/ ngokwake kwenzeka usebenzisa uhlaka** • Ukhumbula izigameko ngokulandelana kwazo • Sebenzisa uhlelo olufanele, ulwazimagama, isipelingi kanye nolwazi • Sebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokulekelelwa **Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama** **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo kusichazamazwi** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngendlela efanele, esebenzisa isichazamazwi sakhe • Ubunye nobuningi **Ukusebenzisa imisho** • Ukuqonda izinkathi • Sebenzisa isandiso sesikhathi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhl;anganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 5				
ITHEMU 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
37-38	**Ubamba iqhaza ezingxoweni** • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzo • Uhlonipha abanye abafundi • Ulalela abanye futhi abakhuthaze ukuba bakhulume • Ushintshashintsha ulimi uma kunesidingo **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo emfishane noma umlolozelo noma iculo • Dlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Nikeza ubuye ulandele imiyalelo • Xoxa ngezindaba zakho		**Wenza iphosta** • Faka ulwazi olufanele • Faka izithombe • Ukusebenzisa isilinganiso sokubhala ngokufanele • Wethula umbhalo wokuqala onobunono nobonakalayo • Bhala ulwazimbhalo usebenzisa uhlaka • Khetha ulwazi olufanele • Bhala izigaba ezifinyelela kwezimbili • Usebenzisa isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele • Usebenzisa izihlanganisi • Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama • Ubunye nobuningi bamabizo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Thuthukisa ukusebenzisa izihlanganiso • Usebenzisa izandiso zokwenza **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa
39-40	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**			

IBANGA 6

IBANGA – 6				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
1-2	**Ukualela indaba emfishane** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uphendula imibuzo eqondile ukukhombisa ukuqonda • Uyaziphendulela ngendaba, eyihlanganisa nempilo yakhe **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ngenhloso yokuzithuthukisa** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Xoxa ngesihloko	**Funda indaba emfishane** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukucabangela phambili, usebenzisa amathiphu emisindo nawendikimba • Uxoxisana ngohlu lwamagama amasha avela embhalweni ofundiwe • Uxoxisana ngesihloko, isakhiwo/iploti futhi lapho indaba yenzeka khona (isizinda) • Uphendula imibuzo ngendaba **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimisa ngendlela efanele ufunda ngokushelela	**Bhala isigaba ngokusizwa** • Sebenzisa uhlaka • Bhala isitatimende sokucula esifanele ngokusizwa • Sebenzisa izihlanganiso • Bhala isiphetho ngokusizwa • Sebenzisa uhlelo olufanele, ulwazimagama, isipelingi kanye nezimpawu zokubhala **Sebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ube usizwa** • Uninga ngemiqondo • Bukeza • Lungisa • Bhala umbhalo wokugcina • Yethula umbhalo wokugcina ohlanzekile nobonakalayo **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo .	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amgama, njengokwakha amagama anemisindo ezwakala ifana • Sebenzisa ulwazilwamagama asetshenziswa njalo/ kakhulu **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Uqonda amabizo ezinto ezibalekayo (isib. incwadi - izincwadi) • Sebenzisa izabizwana zoqobo (mina, thina, zona njll) • Yakha usebenzisa isivumelwano senhloko esiyisenzo isib. kunencwadi eyodwa/ kunezincwadi ezimbili • Wakha ngokuqonda ukustshenziswa kwezinkathi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA – 6				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
3-4	**Ugcina ingxoxo ngesihloko esejwayelekile (isib. inhlanzeko)** • Ubuza aphendule imibuzo • Uhlonipha abanye abafundi ngokubalalela **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzuthuthukise** (khetha ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Uxoxa ngesihloko esejwayelekile	**Ufunda umbhalo olula ochazayo/oxoxayo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukucabangela phambili, usebenzisa amathiphu emisindo nawendikimba • Uxoxisana ngohlu lwamagama amasha avela embhalweni ofundiwe • Uphendula imibuzo elula ngombhalo **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Uxoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuzimela/ngabaili** • Wabelana ngemibono embhalweni	**Ubhala amanothi akhe alula noma umyalezo** • Ugcizelela izakhi zamanothi/umyalezo • Sebenzisa uhlaka • Uthumela umyalezo kumuntu ofanele • Ulungisa umbhalo wakhe ngokusizwa, elungisa ukuhleleka, izimpawu zokubhala, namaphutha esipelingi **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa** • Uninga ngemiqondo • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Bukeza • Lungisa • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina obhaleke kahle nobonakalayo **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama • Usebenzisa ulwazi lokuhlela ngama-alfabhethi ukuthola amgama kusichazamazwi • Ubhidliza amagama amade ngokwamalunga **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Ubukeza amabizo • Wakhangokuqonda izinkathi • Wakha iziphawulo nezandiso **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA – 6				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
5-6	**Ukulalela indaba y** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uqonda imibuzo eyisisekelo **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho) • Uhaya inkondlo noma ingxenye yendaba • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Uxoxa gesihloko esejwayelekile	**Funda umbhalo** Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukucabangela phambili, usebenzisa amathiphu emisindo nawendikimba • Uxoxisana ngohlu lwamagama amasha avela embhalweni ofundiwe • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimise ngendlela efanele, ufunde ngokushelela nangesivinini esifanele **Xoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Uxoxa ngemizwa yakhe	**Uyabhala ukuze akwazi ukubuka emuva ngokwakhe** • Wethula abuye axoxe ngezakhi zedayari • Usebenzisa uhlaka • Usebenzisa indlela engahlekile • Uxoxa ngokulandelana kezigameko • Usebenzisa izihlanganiso • Usebenzisa uhlelo olufanele, isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amgama ajwayelekile ngendlela esebenzisa isichazamazwi sakhe • Usebenzisa ulwazi lokuhleleka kwama-alfabhethi ukuthola amagama kusichazamazwi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakha usebenzisa izabizwana zoqobo (isib. Mina, wena, kona, thina, bona) • Qonda usebenzise izenzo ezisho ukwenza • Sebenzisa izihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukwandisa (kanye) nokulandelana (kwase, ngaphambi) • Sebenzisa indlela yokubuza isib.ubani, ini, nini, yiphi, ngobani, kanjani • Osonhlamvukazi bamabizo qho uziqalo zamagama abanthu nendlela ababizwa ngayo ngokwesikhundla isib. Mnu.; Dkt. **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA – 6				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
7-8	**Ulalela futhi anikeze imiyalelo elandelanayo** • Uphendula ngokwenza imiyalelo elandelanayo enzima • Usebenzisa amagama ahlanganisayo • Usebenzisa ukuhleleka ngendlela **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuze uzithuthukise** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo/iculo/ ingxenye yendaba • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Uxoxa ngesihloko	**Ufunda umbhalo wenkambiso/wenqubo onemifanekiso isib**. imifanekiso/izithombe/ amagrafu/ Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda: sebenzisa isihloko, izithombe, nezihlokwana ukuqagela • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda ngokusizwa ukuxoxa ngemifanekiso egqamile ukuqonda imibhalomifanekiso • Ulandela imiyalelo **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa ngendlela, eshelela, eshesha futhi ezethula ngendlela efanele **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma okubhalwayo)** **Wenza iphazeli yamagama ukuzithuthukisa** • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olufanele • Upela kahle amagama • Uchaza okushiwo amagama/ uwasebenzisa emshweni	**Uqedela imifanekisombhalo, isib. imidwebo/ izithombe/amagrafu/ imifanekiso** • Wengeza amalebuli afanele • Ufaka ulwazi olufanele • Usebenzisa amagama amqoka **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa indlela ephoqayo yesenzo • Qala ukusebenzisa amagama asho okuthile njengokuthi kunye, kubili, njll. Nokokuqala, okwesibili, okokugcina • Sebenzisa isandiso esikhombisa ukuphika (isib.'anginayo', 'akanayo') • Sebenzisa 'kufanele' ukukhombisa isidingo • Sebenzisa inkathi edlule eqhubekayo • Qala ukusebenzisa izandiso ngaphambi kwebizo ukukhombisa inkombandlela (eduze, eceleni) isikhathi (ngesikhathi, kade) ubunikazi (eka, okuka) • Qonda usebenzise indlela ephikayo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Omqondofana (amagama abhalwa futhi abizwe ngokwehluka kodwa achaza into efanayo isib. Hamba/goduka)

IBANGA – 6				
ITHEMU YOKU – 1				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
9-10	**Ulalela izinkondlo/ amaculo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Uchaza ngomlomo umehluko phakathi komuntu nento **Udlala umdlalo wolimi ukuzithuthukisa** • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Kunikezwana amathuba • Uqedela umdlalo ngesikhathi esibekiwe	**Ufunda izinkondlo** Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amashadi/amathebula/ imifanekiso/amabalazwe egqondo/amabalazwe/ izithombe • Uxoxa ngesihloko kanye nomqondo obalulekile • Uqonda ngokulula ezinye zezici zenkondlo, isib. imvumelwano, ifanamsindo, ifuzamsindo, ukuqhathanisa, ukwenzasamuntu • Uxoxa ngohlu lolwazimagama olusha oluvela embhalweni ofundiwe • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)**	**Uchaza umuntu/ isilwane/isitshalo/ indawo ngokubhala phansi** • Khetha okuqukethwe okufanele • Gcila ekuchazeni okubonakalayo • Bhala ngokuqamba usebenzisa iziphawulo nezichasiso • Lungisa umbhalo wakho, ulungise amaphutha esipelingi **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo **Sebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa** • Cabanga ngemibono eyahlukene • Bhala umbhalo owumzamo wokuqala • Bukeza • Lungisa • Bhala umbhalo owumzamo wokugcina • Yethula umbhalo owumzamo wokugcina ongenamaphutha futhi obonakalayo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngendlela efanele usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qonda bese usebenzisa ongumnini (amehlo kaNdalo) • Sebenzisa izibaluli ezehlukene ezifaka nokuthi unto yakhiwe ngani isib. yocingo • Sebenzisa inkathi yamanje ukuchaza into oyenza nsukuzonke • Sebenzisa izinhlobo ezahlukene zeziphawulo • Sebenzisa izinkathi **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa • Amagama ambaxa, isib. inkundla yezemidlalo

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
11-12	**Ulalela indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uphendula imibuzo esobala • Uqaphela ulwazi olufanele • Uxoxa aphinde axoxe futhi izindaba **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuzithuthukisa** (khetha ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Uxoxa ngesihloko	**Funda indaba** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungisela ukufunda: funda ubuye uxoxe ngesihloko ubheke nezithombe • Sebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukuqagela • Uxoxa ngomagama amasha • Ubona ukuhlelka kwezigameko, ishashalazi nabalingisi (isib. chaza imizwa yomlingisi uxoxe nangezenzo zakhe) • Uveza imbangela nemiphumela • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** • Ukuzilolongela ukufunda • Funda kuzwakale uphimise kahle amagama, ufunda ushelela **Uxoxa/ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ngababili** • Unikeza umbono abuye ayamanise izincwadi nempilo yakhe	**Bhala indaba elula usebenzisa uhlaka** • Usebenzisa isimo sendaba njenohlaka • Bhala umusho wokuvula ofanele • Usebenzisa izihlanganiso • Usebenzisa ezinye iziphawulo • Ubhala isiphetho esifanele • Uhlala esihlokweni • Uxhuma imisho ukwenza isigaba esebenzisa isabizwana nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele • Usebenzisa uhlelo olufanele, isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nencazelo yamagama **Ubhala isigaba ukwethula kanye nokuchaza umbono** • Ubhala imisho emi-2 ukuya kwemi-3 • Ukhetha ulwazi olufanele • Ubeka umbono wakhe • Uchaza ngokunengqondo **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Bhala imisho usebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo • Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa • Ukhuluma ngemibono • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Uyalungisa • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ongenasici nobonakalayo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakhe **Ukusebnza ngemisho** • Uqonda asebenzise amabizo • Wakha asebenzise izabizwana zokukhomba • Wakha asebenzise isiphawulo ngaphambi kwebizo isib. encane inja • Uqala ukusebenzisa izenzo kanye nezinkathi • Wakha ngokuqonda abuye asebenzise inkathi yamanje elula • Uqala ukusebenzisa amgama/acela imvume/acelayo **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngokuhlanganyela/ ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
13-14	**Ulalela kuchazwa ngomlomo izinto/ izilwane/izitshalo/ izindawo** Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Uchaza into ukuthi iyini • Uchaza into ukuthi ingeyani • Uhlukanisa ingxenye kokuphelele • Udweba into abuye ayilebule • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama oluhambelana nezinye izihloko **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma** (khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Unikeza abuye alandele imiyalelo • Uxoxa ngesihloko	**Ufunda ulwazi** isib. olubuya kwezinye izifundo. Umbhalo othathwe encwadini noma kufayela kathisha (TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda:uxoxa ngeshloko ebe esizwa abukeze namagama abaluklekile • Ufunda isigaba bese ekhomba/ebona umqondo nesihloko esivelele nomusho oyinhloko • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo nangemifanekiso, isb. Amagrafu, amatafula, imidwebo **Uxoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Ufingqa akufundile ngemisho emibalwa	**Ubhala incazelo/isigaba/ imisho yezinto/izilwane/ izitshalo/izindawo** • Faka imininingwane efanele neqondile • Uchaza ngokubukeka kwento • Usebenzisa amagama ahlanganisayo ngendlela efanele • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Izimpawu zokubhala ngokufanele • Ubhala okokuqala, athole ukugxekwa, alungise abuye abhale futhi **Wakha, adwebe abuye alebule imifanekiso isib**. amashadi/ amatafula/imidwebo/ imiqondomdwebo • Usebenzisa ulwazi oluthathwe embhalweni obhaliwe noma embhalweni odwetshiwe • Ufaka imininingwane ethile • Usebenzisa amagama nemishwana • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele **Ugcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo • Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa • Ukhuluma ngemiqondo eminingi • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Uyalungisa • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ongenaphutha futhi obonakalayo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nezincazelo zamagama • Ugcizelela ubunye nobunigi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Usebenzisa amabizo anobuningi kuphela • Uqala ukusebenzisa izabizwana songumnini • Usebenzisa iziphawulo • Usebenzisa izbaluli • Uthuthukisa ukuqonda nokusebenzisa izihlanganiso. **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni ofundwe ngesikhathi sokusunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
15-16	**Ulalela izehlakalo zabanye** • Usho imiqondo ebalulekile nabantu • Uphendula imibuzo ngokuthi yini eyenzeke kuqala, isibili, njll. Exoxa ngesigameko esisodwa • Ulingisa izimo ezejwayelekile • Usebenzisa ulimi olufanele • Uhlela okuqukethwe ngendlela **Ukuzilolongela ukulalela nokukhuluma ukuzithuthukisa** (Khetha okukodwa ongazilolonga ngakho nsukuzonke) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi • Uxoxa noma axoxe futhi izindaba	**Ufunda izindaba** (ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kufayela yemithombo kathisha (i-trf) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda:uqagela ngokusizwa esebenzisa isihloko nezithombe • Ukufundela ukuthola ulwazi futhi usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo • Uqonda ulwazimagama • Uphendula imibuzo eyisisekelo sendaba **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Ufunda umbhalo okhuluma ngaye nangomphakathi** • Uphawula ngomqondo ovelele • Ufundela ukuthola imininingwane nezaziso • Uphawula ngesibingelelo nokwakheka kwendaba **Uxoxa ngombhalo ofundwe ngesikhathi sokufunda ngayedwa/ ngababili** • Uhlobanisa ukufunda nempilo yakhe	**Ubhala incwadi yakhe elula** • Wethula izinto ezitholakala encwadini yobungani • Usebenzisa uhlaka • Ubhala okungenani izigaba ezimbili ezimfishane • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olushanezimpawu zokubhala azifundile • Usebenzisa uhlelo olufanele, isipelingi, izimpawu zokubhala nezikhala phakathi kwezigaba **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa** • Uxoxa ngemiqondo eyahlukene • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Uyalungisa • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ongenamaphutha nobhalwe ngendlela ebonakalayo **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebnza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngendlela esebenzisa isichazamazwi sakhe **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Usebenzisa izenzo njalo • Sebenzisa isimo sesenzo ‘sokuba’ –ba/-be/baya…/ngi/si../Ube/ bebe • Izisho, isib, hlukanisa, faka phakathi • Inkathi yamanje (isib, ngiyaqeda_) • Sebenzisa kaningi izandiso ezisho ukuthi into yenzeka kaningi kangakanani (isib. Qabukela efikile) • Qala ukusebenzisa izihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukuphikisana (kodwa), isizathu (ngoba) nenhloso (ukuze). **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Amqondohluka(isib, kancane/kakhulu)

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 2				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
17-18	**Wenza ucwaningo lwekilasi**, isib. U-inthavyuwa afunda nabo), erekhoda izimpendulo eshadini noma kugrafu • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzo • Uphatha ama-inthavyu ngesizotha • Ubhala imininingwane ngendlela • Usebenzisa ukwakheka ngendlela • Usebenzisa amagama abalulekile nemishwana ebalulekile **Ugcina ingxoxo ngesihloko esijwayelekile** • Ulalela futhi anikeza abanye abafundi ithuba lokukhuluma • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzo • Ubeka umbono, isib. Kungani ucabanga ....? **Ugcina ingxoxo ngesihloko esjwayelekile ukuzithuthukisa** • Ulalela abuye anikeze abanye abantwana ithuba lokukhuluma • Ubuza aphendule imibuzo • Unikeza umbono	**Ufunda ulwazimbhalo olunemifanekiso isib. Umabonakude/ amashadi/izithombe/ amagrafu** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kufayela yemithombo kathisha (i-trf) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda uxoxisana ngesihloko futhi abukeze uhlu lwamagama olubalulekile • Ufunda izigaba futhi aphawule umqondo obalulekile kanye nomusho oyisihloko • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo nangezithombe • Ufunda ekha phezulu ebheka amaphuzu abalulekile **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Ukuzilolongela ukufunda** • Funda kuzwakale uphimse ngendlela, ufunda ngokushelela **Uxazulula iphazeli ukuzithuthukisa** • Usebenzisa ulwazimagama olufanele • Upela amagama ngendlela • Uchaza izincazelo zamagama/ awasebenzise emshweni • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Uqhathanisa izincwadi kanye nemibhalo efundiwe	**Ubhala iphepha elinezinhlelo zemibuzo** • Ubhala imibuzo ngokucacile • Ushiya izikhala zokubhala izimpendulo • Usebenzisa izindlela zokubuza ngendlela efanele **Ubhala isigaba ukuveza nokuchaza umbono** • Ubhala imisho emi 3 – 4 ngokusizwa • Ukhetha ulwazi olufanele • Unikeza umbono wakhe • Uchaza ngokucopheplela **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokusizwa** • Udlala ngemibono • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Uyalungisa • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ongenamaphutha nobhalwe ngendlela ebonakalayo **Gcina ngokubhala phansi amagama nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakho** • Bhala imisho usebenzise amagama noma okuchazwayo ukukhombisa incazelo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa isimo sesenzo ‘sokuba’ –ba/-be/baya…/ngi/si../Ube/bebe • Yakha aveza ukuqonda inkathi ezayo • Akha imisho ngokusebenzisa izindlela zesenzo, isib, ‘nginga’ ukusho ukuthi ungakwazi noma okusho ukucela imvume • Qala ukusebenzisa izingasenzo zezikhuliso, isib. ‘Kakhulu, kanzima, ngempela, cishe, ’ **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Amqondophika (isib, kuhle;kubi)
19-20	**UKUHLOLA NGOKUPHELELE**			

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
21-22	**Ulalela indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uphendula imibuzo esobala • Uxoxisana ngomlingiswa obalulekile • Uqaphela ulwazi olufanele eshadini, isib. ukuhamba kwesikhathi • Ufingqa indaba **Ulalela ukuchazwa komlomo kwezindawo/ izilwane/izitshalo/izinto, njll.** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uphawula izindawo • Uqaphela ulwazi olufanele, isib. ishadi/ ithebula • Uphawula ukufana nokwehluka **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxa fngokwenzeka noma isigameko ngokulandelana okufanele, esebenzisa amagama ahlanganisayo	**Ufunda indaba** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Uchaza izimpawu zombhalo • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo, uyabekisela • Uphendula imibuzo ngendaba • Uphawula futhi axoxisane ngesizinda kanye nabalingiswa • Uchaza imbangela nomphumela endabeni, isib. Kwenzekani uma ....? Noma Kungani ucabanga ... kwenzeka? • Uyaziphendulela ngendaba • Ukuhlobaniska nempilo yakhe **Ufunda incwadi yobungani elula** • Uphawula imiqondo ebalulekile • Uphendula imibuzo esobala • Uphawula uzici zombhalo, isib. usuku, isibingelelo **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Wenza ukubukezwa kwencwadi ookuhlelekile ngokwethula komlomo okuhle	**Ubhala okubhalwe kudayari** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe okufaUkhetha isihloko esifaneleele isihloko • Usbenzisa ukwakheka okufanele njengefremu • Uxoxa ngezigameko ngendlela efanele • Usebenzisa amagama ahlanganisayo • Usebenzisa uhlelo lolimi, isipelingi, izimpawu zokubhala ekanye nezikhala phakathi kweziba ngemfanelo **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Uninga ngemiqondo • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Ufunda umbhalo elungisa amaphutha • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ngobunono, obonakalayo **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Faka iziphongozo ezizokwenza ubuningi bamagama **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakha amabibo qho, isib. anosonhlamvukazi • Inkathi yamanje esho okuyiqiniso elingenakushintsha, isib. 'Ilanga lishona entshonalanga.' • Inkathi yamanje eqhubekayo (uyafunda.') • Sebenzisa 'kuzo' ukukhombisa intoezokwenzeka, isib kuzoba nesichotho namuhla • Qala ukusebenzisa izihlanganiso ezichaza imbangela noshintsho (ukuze) **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Amqondofana (isib, hamba/goduka)

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
23-24	**Ulallela izinkulumo ezilula ngezinto ezidingidwayo** • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzo enzinyana • Uxoxisana ngephuzu elibalulekile • Ubeka imibono • Ohlonipha abanye abafundi ngokubalalela • Ukhuthaza amanye amalungu eqembu ukuba asekela abanye abafunda nabo **Ukhuluma ngento ngemuva kokuzilungiselela** • Ukhetha isihloko kanye nokuqukethwe okufanele • Uhlala esihlokweni • Uhlela okuqukethwe ngendlela **Uqokelela ulwazi, isib. wenza ucwaningo olulula olufana nesaveyi** • Ukhetha imibuzo ezobuzwa • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzo • Ubhala ulwazi njengamanothi kuphephambuzo elakhiwe **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko	**Umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe**, isib. amashadi/amathebula/ imifanekiso/amabalazwe egqondo/amabalazwe/ izithombe/amagrafu. Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ufunda ekha phezulu efuna imininingwane ebalulekile • Ubuza imibuzo • Ukhetha imininingwane efanele ukuphendula imibuzo • Wakha ukufingqwa kwamabalazwe engqondo ombhalo/ okukhethwe embhalweni **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Wenza iphazeli yamagama** • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olufanele • Upela kahle amagama • Uchaza okushiwo amagama/ uwasebenzisa emshweni **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Ufingqa umbhalo ngemisho emi-5.	**Ubhala umbhalo wolwazi esebenzisa izithombe**, isib. amashadi/amathebula/ imifanekiso/amabalazwe engqondo/amabalazwe/ amagrafu Umbhalo vela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ufunda ubhalo okhethiwe • Usebenzisa ulwazi oluvela embhalweni ukudweba kanye nokufakela amagama ebhalweni wezithombe, isib amathebuli noma amashadi noma amagrafu • Usebenzisa ngokucacile ubudlelwano phakathi kwezingxenye ezahlukene zomfanekiso noma nanoma imuphi omunye umbhalo onezithombe **Udlulisela umbhalo ukuba ube uhlobo olubhaliwe, isib. usebenzisa amanothi olwazi oluqokelelwe** • Udlulisela umbhalo ukuba ube uhlobo olubhaliwe, isib. igrafu noma ithebula • Uhluza ulwazi **Ubhala umbiko omfushane ngolwazi oluqokelelwe** • Uhlolisisa ulwazi futhi athathe izinqumo, anike izizathi zazo • Usebenzisa ukwakheka okufanele ngombiko • Usebenziisa izigaba ngendlela, isib. usebenzisa imisho oyisihloko kanye nesekelayo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa ubulili obuhlukene (isib, inkomazi- inkunzi) • Akha usebenzisa izibaluli ngaphambi kwamabizo, isib. Encane inja • Akha usebenzisa isivumelwano senhloko eyisenzo isib. Igundane liyabaleka/ amagundane ayabaleka. • Inkathi yamanje eqhubekayo (isib, uyafunda) • Sebenzisainkathi eddlule eqhubekayo **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Amagama angena ngaphansi kohla oluthile olusencwadini noma isichazamazwi’

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
25-26	**Ulalela izindaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Uphendula imibuzo esobala • Uyaziphendulela, ehlobanisa indabayi nempilo yakhe • Wethula aphinde achaze umbono wakhe • Uphakamisa esinye isiphetho, ucabanga aphinde achaze amathuba okwenzeka **Ufunda futhi indaba** • Usebenzisa ukulandelana okufanele kwezigameko • Ukukhuluma kahle ngabalingiswa abasendabeni • Usebenzisa izinkathi ezethulwe emabangeni adlule • Uphakamisa esinye isiphetho	**Ufunda indaba** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ucabangela phambili esusela ezithombeni • Uxoxisana ngengesihloko, isakhiwo/iploti, abalingiswa kanye nesizinda • Xoxa ngokhondondolo endabeni kungaveza umbono othile ngokubona umhlaba • Uphendula imibuzo ngendaba • Ufingqa indaba ngomlomo • Uphawula ngesifundo/ umyalezo wendaba **WWenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Ufunda izinkondlo** • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib., usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba • Uphendula imibuzo ngenkondlo • Wethula imizwa evuswe inkondlo • Uxoxisana ngemilolozelo • Uxoxa ngokuqhathanisa okwenziwe enkondlweni	**Ubhala indaba elula, esebenzisa inqubo yokubhala ngokuzimela kakhudlwana** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe okuhehayo • Usebenzisa ukwakheka kwendaba njengefremu • Usebensisa ukuqala, imaphakathi kanye nesiphetho • Uxoxa futhi ngezigameko ngendlela efanele • Usebenzisa imisho efanele futhi uhela imisho eno ‘kanye’ kanye no’kodwa’ • Usebenzisa izimpawu zokubhala ezahlukene eziningi, kumbandakanya osokucaphuna • Usebenzisa ukushiya izikhala ezifanele kuzigaba **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Uninga ngemiqondo esebenzisa, isib amabalazwe engqondo • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uthola imibono yabanye ngokuqukethwe kanye nokusetshenziswa kohlelo lolimi kanye nohlu lwamagama • Uhlola isipelingi • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Isifingqo isib, njalonjalo-njll. **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Yakha usebenzisa izabizwana zoqobo (isib. Mina, wena, kona, thina, bona) • Yakha ngokuqonda ukuqhathanisa • Yakha ngokuqonda inkathi edlule • Qala ukusebenzisa “kuzo” ukukhombisa inhloso. • Sebenzisa izandiso zendawo (lapha, lapho) • Qala ukusebenzisa isabizwana soqobo (isib. Eyami, eyakho, eyakhe, eyethu, eyabo) **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Faka izandiso egameni isib, isiphongozo nesijobelelo

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
25-26	**Ulalela iculo/izinkondlo ezilula** Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amashadi/amathebula/ imifanekiso/amabalazwe egqondo/amabalazwe/ izithombe • Ukhumbula umqondo obalulekile • Uxoxisana ngephuzu elingumongo • Uhlobanisa nokwenzeka kuye • Uphawula imvumelwano • Wethula imizwa evuswe inkondlo • Uhaya izinkondlo/ imigqa ekhethiwe **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko	**Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ngokuzethula, ekhombisa ukuqonda • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa kahle, eshesha kanye nokuphakama nokwehla kwezwi **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Uhlobaniska umbhalo nempilo yakhe	**Ubhalela ukuzijabulisa**, isib. inkondlo elula yemigqa emine noma imigqa evumelanayo • Ukhetha isihloko • Ubhala imisho evumelwanayo ngesihloko • Usebenzisa ukuqhathanisa okukodwa **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
27-28	**Ulalela futhi alandele imiyalelo,** isib. inkambiso • Ucabangela phambili ukuthi kuzokwekani • Uxoxisana ngemininigwane ethile yobhalo • Uxoxisana ngokulandelana kwemiyalo • Uxoxisana ngohlobo lwezenzo esisetshenziswe ku- **Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula** • Ulandela imiyalelo ngemfanelo • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama ahlukene • Ushintshana ngamathuba nabanye, abanikeze ithuba lokukhuluma **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko	**Ufunda umbhalo wenkambiso**, isib. iresiphi/ imiyalelo yokwenza intshengisombono/ iphrojekhthi yesayensi Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kuzihloko kanye nasembhalweni wocwaningo, isibikhasi lokuqukethwe noma i-indekhsi • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukufunda kudluliswa amehlo • Uhumusha izithombe • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo • Uchaza ukuthi yini okufanele yenziwe • Uxoxisana ngemininigwane ethile yobhalo • Uxoxisana ngefomethi yobhalo • Uxoxisana ngokulandelana kwemiyalo • Ulandela imiyalelo	**Umbhalo wolwazi**, isib. imibhalo esetshenziswa kwezinye izifundo • Ubhala okungenani izigaba ezimbili ukuya kwezintathu • Uhlela ulwazi ngendlela • Usebenzisa umusho oyisihloko kanye nemishwana esekelayo • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olumayelana nezinye izifundo • Usebenzisa ulimi oluhlelekile • Kumbandakanya imininingwane ethile • Usebenzisa bekunzima approximately **Wakha ukufingqwa kwamabalazwe engqondo ombhalo omfushane** • Uphawula okungenani amahuzu amathathu abalulekile • Uhlela ulwazi ngobunono • Usebenzisa izimpawu/ imifanekiso ezifanele kanye neminye imibhalo ebhalwayo efanele • Ukhombisa ngokucacile ubudlelwano phakathi kwezingxenye ezahlukene zomfanekiso noma nanoma imuphi omunye umbhalo obhaliwe • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olufanele • Uhlola isipelingi • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukuhlola isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qonda bese usebenzisa ongumnini (amehlo kaBongi) • Sebenzisa izibaluli ezehlukene ezifaka nokuthi unto yakhiwe ngani isib. yocingo • Qonda izenzo esisho umnyakazo • Yethula inkathi yamanje (ngiyaqeda) **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
27-28		**Ufunda imibhalo yolwazi evela kulo lonke uhlelo lwezifundo, isib. umbiko omfishane/ incazelo evela kwezinye izifundo** • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kuzihloko kanye nasembhalweni wocwaningo, isibikhasi lokuqukethwe noma i-indekhsi • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. funda edlulisa amehlo ebheka imininingwane ebalulekile • Uhumusha izithombe • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo • Unikeza imiqondo ebalulekile kanye nemininingwane esekelayo **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Unikeza imiqondo ebalulekile • Uchaza izimpawu zeminye imibhalo efundiwe, isib. izincwadi okubukwa kuzo ezinamakhasi okuqukethwe kanye ne-indekhsi	**Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Uninga ngemiqondo esebenzisa, isib amabalazwe engqondo • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uhlola isipelingi • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	

IBANGA LESI – 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 3				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
29-30	**Ubamba iqhaza ezingxoweni ezimfushane ngesihloko esijwayelekile** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ubuza imibuzo efanele futhi aphendule imibuzo • Ugcina ingxoxo • Wethula imibono • Uhlonipha imibono yabanye • Ukhuthaza abanye abafundi ukuba bakhulume ngolimi olungeziwe **Ulingisa imidlalo elula** • Usebenzisa okuqukethwe nolimi olufanele • Usebenzisa inkulumo ngqo • Wakha ukuhamba kwendaba okunomqondo • Usebenzisa izwi nokuzethula kanye nokunyakaza komzimba ukudlulisa okushiwoyo • Iphimisa amagama azwakale futhi kahle **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko	**Uyalingisa** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ngaphambu Kokufunda ucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda • Uphawula ukugeleza kwendaba • Uxoxisana ngabalingiswa, isizinda kanye nesenzeko • Wethula imizwa evuswe ngumbhalo • Uxoxisana ngezinto ezibonakala ngazo zombhalo ikakhulukazi izimpawu zokubhala kanye nefomethi **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ezethula, ekhombisa ukuqonda ubhalo • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa kahle, eshesha kanye nokuphakama nokwehla kwezwi **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Wethula umbiko omfishane wencwadi womlomo onokuqukthwe kanye nokwakheka okufanele • Ubeka umbono wakhe	**Ubhala umbhalo womdlalo omfushane,** esebenzisa isitayela esihlelekile sokubhala • Ukhetha abalingiswa abafanele • Uthuthukisa ingxoxo kanye nesenzeko ngendlela • Usebenzisa inkulumo ngqo • Usebenzisa izimpawu zokubhala, isib. ikholoni, ombabazi kanye nemibuzo **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Uninga ngemiqondo esebenzisa, isib amabalazwe engqondo • Ukhiqiza umbhalo wokuqala • Uthola umbono wabanye futhi uyabukeza • Uyafunda elungisa amaphutha • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ngobunono nonezikhala ezifanele **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Yakha usebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. Wakhe amagama avela ohlotsheni olulodwa lwemisindo isib. Akha amagama anomsindo ofanayo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qala ukusebenzisa amagama asho okuthile njengokuthi kunye, kubili, njll. Nokokuqala, okwesibili, okokugcina **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Omabizwafane kodwa kusho izinto ezimbili nangaphezulu ezehlukene (isib. inyanga)

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
31-32	**Ulalela indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ubuza imibuzo efanele futhi aphendule imibuzo • Ufingqa indaba • Uyaphendula bese eqala ukubuza aphinde aphendule eminye yemibuzo enzinyana, isib. Kungani enga-.....?, Yini ... ? Ucabangani ... ? • Uxoxisana ngenkambo enhle, imidanti yasenhlalweni futhi ebucayi endabeni, ushintshashitsha ulimi uma kunesidingo **Uxoxa indaba yakhe** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe nesihloko esifanele • Uhlela izigameko ngendlela • Usho amagama abalingiswa endabeni • Usebenzisa amagama ahlanganisayo **Wethula ngomlomo ukubukezwa kwencwadi** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe kanye nokwakheka okufanele • Wethula aphinde achaze umbono wakhe • Wethula ngokucacile nokugeleza	**Ufunda indaba** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo yamagama amasha • Uxoxisana ngesakhiwo/iploti, isizinda kanye nomlingiswa • Uxoxisana ngokulandelana kwezigameko, ephendula imibuzo ngokuthi yini eyenzeka kuqala, isibili, njll. • Ubuza aphinde aphendule imibuzo enzinyana, isib. Kungani enga-.....?; Yini ... ? Ucabangani ... ? • Wethula aphinde achaze umbono wakhe • Uxoxisana ngokuthi abalingiswa bawumela kanjani umbono othile womhlaba • Uxoxisana ngendima edlalwa yimifanenikiso ebonwayo • Uxoxisana ngezindlela ezahlukene zokwethulwa kwabalingiswa	**Ubhala indaba elula** Usebenzisa ukwakhekha kwendaba njengefremu • Usebenzisa ulumi ngokucabanga ikakhulukazi uhlu lwamagama olunhlobonhlobo • Uhlanganisa imisho ibe yisigaba esibumbene esebenzisa izabizwana, amagama ayizihlanganisi kanye nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele • Usebenzisa izinhlobonhlobo zohlu lamagama kumbandakanya amagama ayizihlanganisi nemishwana • Usebenzisa inkathi efanele njalo • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukuhlola isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Uninga ngemiqondo • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Ufunda umbhalo elungisa amaphutha • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ngobunono, obonakalayo **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Upela amagama ngokufanele, usebenzisa isichazamazwi sakho • Yakha usebenzisa ulwazi lwemisindo ukupela amagama, isib. Wakhe amagama avela ohlotsheni olulodwa lwemisindo isib. Akha amagama anomsindo ofanayo **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Uqonda asebenzise amabizo anobuningi (isib.incwadi – izincwadi) • Wakha asebenzise izabizwana zokukhomba (isib. lokhu, lokho, lokhuya, lezi, njll) • Wakha asebenzise iziphawulo ngaphambi kwamabizoisib.encane inja • Usebenzisa isandiso senkathi (isib.kusasa, izolo) • Uqala ukusebenzisa ongumnini **Ulwazimagama ngokwengqikithi** • Amagama athathwe embhalweni wokufunda ngokuhlanganyela noma ngayedwa • Amagama aphikisanayo (kulukhuni/kuthambile)

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
31-32	**Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko	**Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Ufunda izincwadi zobungani** • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ucbangela esusela ekufundeni ekha phezulu ebheka amaphuzu abalulekile • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo yamagama amasha • Uxoxisana ngombono obalulekile kanye nemininingwane ethile • Uxoxisana ngenhloso yencwadi • Uxoxisana ngefomethi yencwadi **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ngokuzethula, ekhombisa ukuqonda • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa kahle, eshesha kanye nokuphakama nokwehla kwezwi **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Uxoxa futhi indaba ngemisho emi-5ukuya kweyi-6		

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
33-34	**Ukubamba iqhaza kuzingxoxo** • Ukuxoxisana ngobuhle nobubi • Usebenzisa imiqondo kanye nohlu olwamagamaizib. leyo emayelana nezinye izifundo • Ushitshisina ngamathuba • Uhlonipha imibono yabanye • Ukhuthaza abanye abafundi ukuba bakhulume **Ulalela futhi axoxisane ngenkulumo** • Uxoxisana ngombono obalulekile kanye nemininingwane ethile • Ubhala ulwazi oluthile eshadini noma kubalzwe lengqondo **Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula** • Ulandela imiyalelo ngemfanelo • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama ahlukene • Ushintshana ngamathuba nabanye, abanikeze ithuba lokukhuluma **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko	Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi, isib. ovela kulo lonke uhlelo lwezifundo Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ufunda futhi axoxisane ngezihloko kanye nezithombe • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. funda edlulisa amehlo ebheka imininingwane ebalulekile • Uqaphela indima edlala yimifanekiso nezithombe ekwakheni umqondo • Uphendula imibuzo ngombhalo • Uphawula ubuhle nobubi • Ufingqa ubhalo wolwazi ngokusekela **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo **Ufunda aphinde axazulule amaphazeli** • Upela kahle amagama • Ukhombisa ukuqonda okushiwo amagama • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olufanele **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Wethula imizwa ephendula emibhalweni efundiwe • Uhlobaniska umbhalo nempilo yakhe	Usebenzisa ulwazi lombhalo onezithombe, isib. amashadi/ amathebula/imifanekiso/ amabalazwe egqondo/ amabalazwe izithombe/ amagrafu ukuze abhale umbhalo • Ubhala okungenani izigaba ezimbili ukuya kwezintathu • Amaphuzu afanele futhi ahlelwe kahle • Isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala zifanele **Ufunda ubhalo wolwazi onezithombe** • Wakha ukufingqwa kwamabalazwe engqondo ombhalo omfushane • Uhlela ubuhle kanye nobubi ngethebula **Ubhala izincazelo nezibonelo** • Ukhetha izinto ezifanele ukuchazwa • Usebenzisa izibonelo ezinokubambekayo nezifanele • Ukhetha ulwazi olufanele • Usebenzisa uhlu lwamagama olumayelana nezinye izifundo • Usebenzisa isichazamazwi ukuhlola isipelingi kanye nencazelo yamagama **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Pela amagama ajwayelekile ngokufanele kusichazamazwi • Yakha ngokwazi amagama owabona njalo nasebenza kaningi **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qonda ngokusebenzisa amabizo ezinto ezibalekayo (isib, incwadi-izincwadi) • Yakha ngokusebenzisa isabizwana sokukhomba (isib, lokhu, lokhu, lezo, lezi) • Yakha usebenzisa izibaluli ezifakwa ngaphambi kwebizo (isib, encane inja) • Sebenzisa indlela yempoqo yesenzo isib. ima. • Uses past progressive/ past perfect progressive • Sebenzisa izandiso zesikhathi (isib. kusasa, izolo) • Qala ngokusebenzisa izandiso esiba ngaphambi kwebizo ezikhombisa inkombandlela (eceleni, eduze) isikhathi (ngesikhathi) ubunikazi (eka, kuka) **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa • Amqondofana (isib. Kakhulu/kancane)

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
35-36	**Ulalela indaba** (Ukukhetha izindaba ezinqajiwe/izindaba zendabuko/ukukhuluma ngomuntu/izindaba zezehlo/amahlaya/ izindaba zangempela, ezindaba eziqanjiwe zomlando Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ubuza imibuzo efanele futhi aphendule imibuzo • Ufingqa indaba • Uyaphendula bese eqala ukubuza aphinde aphendule eminye yemibuzo enzinyana, isib. Kungani enga-.....?, Yini ... ? Ucabangani ... ? • Wethula umbono, enikeza izizathu zawo, isib. ngenkambo enhle, imidanti yasenhlalweni futhi ebucayi endabeni, ushintshashitsha ulimi uma kunesidingo • Usebenzisa izinkathi ezethulwe emabangeni angaphambili, isib. Inkathi yamanje nezayo	**Ufunda indaba** Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba ukuthola incazelo yamagama amasha • Uxoxisana ngesakhiwo/iploti, isizinda kanye nomlingiswa • Uxoxisana ngokulandelana kwezigameko, ephendula imibuzo ngokuthi yini eyenzeka kuqala, isibili, njll. • Ubuza aphinde aphendule imibuzo enzinyana, isib. Kungani enga-.....?; Yini ... ? Ucabangani ... ? • Wethula aphinde achaze umbono wakhe	**Ubhala ukubukezwa kwencwadi** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe kanye nokwakheka okufanele • Wethula aphinde achaze umbono wakhe • kumbandakanya isihloko, abalingiswa kanye nokufingqwa **Ubhala incwadi yobungani** • Ukhetha okuqukethwe okufanele • Usebenzisa amafremu kuphela uma kudingeka • Ukhela umyalezo ngendlela • Uhlela ulwazi ulwazi ngendlela • Ubhla igama lakhe ekugcineni • Usebenzisa isitayela esingahleliwe sokubhala ukwenzela inhloso **Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Uninga ngemiqondo • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Ufunda umbhalo elungisa amaphutha • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ngobunono, obonakalayo	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nencazelo yamagama • Sebenzisa ulwazi lwezinhlamvu zamagama ukubheka uhlamvu lokuqala ukuthola igama kusichazamazwi. **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Qala ukuqonda amabizo ezinto ezingabaleki (isib. Amakhaza) • Qala ukusebenzisa izabizwana zoqobo (isib, yami, yakho, yakhe, yethu, yabo) • Sebenzisa ukuqonda ukusetshenziswa inkathi yamanje • Sebenzisa amagama ayizihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukwengeza (kanye) ukulandelana (kwase, ngaphambi) • Hluza umusho olula ukhombise inhloko, isenzo, nomenziwa isib. 'UBongi/ufunda/ incwadi'. • Qonda bese usebenzisa inkulumombiko(isib. 'Igolide elimbiwa emayini yaseGoli libalulekile'.) • Sebenzisa iziphumuzi, ukuhlukanisa amabizo ohlwini • Sebenzisa sebenzisa izimpawu zokucaphuna inkulumo **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
35-36	**Ulalela inkondlo/ izinkondlo** Ufunda umbhalo wolwazi onezithombe, isib. amashadi/amathebula/ imifanekiso/amabalazwe egqondo/amabalazwe/ izithombe • Ukhumbula umqondo obalulekile • Uxoxisana ngephuzu elingumongo • Uhlobanisa nokwenzeka kuye • Uphawula imvumelwano kanye namagama aqala ngemisindo efanayo (ifanamsindo) • Uphawula aphinde uxoxisana ngokuqhathanisa (isib. izifaniso) • Wethula imizwa evuswe inkondlo • Uhaya izinkondlo/ imigqa ekhethiwe **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) • Uhaya inkondlo • Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula • Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela • Uxoxisana ngesihloko • Uxoxa ngezigameko noma okwenzekayo ngokulandelana okufanele, ephendula imibuzo ngokuthi yini eyenzeke kuqala, okwesibili, okwesithathu, njll.	**Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** • Ufunda izinkondlo • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ukucabangela phambili esusela kusihloko nasezithombeni • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib., usebenzisa amathiphu endikimba • Uphendula imibuzo ngenkondlo • Wethula imizwa evuswe inkondlo • Uxoxisana ngemvumelwano kanye nefanamsindo • Uxoxisana ngokuqhathanisa okwenziwe enkondlweni (izifaniso) **Uzilolonga ukufunda** • Ufunda kuzwakale ngokuzethula, ekhombisa ukuqonda • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa kahle, eshesha kanye nokuphakama nokwehla kwezwi **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Wenza ukubukezwa kwencwadi ookuhlelekile ngokwethula komlomo okuhle		

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
37-38	**Ubamba iqhaza ezingxoweni** • Ubuza futhi aphendule imibuzo • Uhlonipha abanye abafundi • Ulalela abanye abafundi futhi abakhuthaze ukuba bakhulume **Ukubamba iqhaza kuzingxoxo** • Uyaninga aphinde achaze amathuba okunokwenzeka • Usebenzisa uhlobo lwesimo • Ushitshisina ngamathuba • Uhlonipha imibono yabanye • Ukhuthaza abanye abafundi ukuba bakhulume **Uzilolonga ukulalela nokukhuluma** (ukhetha ukuzilolonga okukodwa kosuku) Uhaya inkondlo Udlala umdlalo wolimi olula Unika futhi alandele imiyalelo/ izinkombandlela Uxoxisana ngesihloko	**Ufunda imibhalo yabezindaba,** isib. ama-athikili amaphephabhuku/ umbiko wezindaba Umbhalo ovela embhalwenimdwebo noma kuFayela Yemithombo Kathisha (i-TRF) • Ukulungiselela ukufunda ucabangela phambili umbhalo umayelana nani ngokuwukha phezulu • Usebenzisa amasu okufunda, isib. ukufunda kudluliswa amehlo, ukufunda ukha phezulu ubheka amaphuzu abalulekile • Uphendula imibuzo • Uxoxisana ngombono obalulekile kanye nemininingwane ethile • Uxoxisana ngokwendlalwa kanye nokwakhiwa kombhalo • Uqhathanisa ukwendlalwa kanye nesakhiwo kuleso sephephandaba **Wenza umsebenzi wokuqondisisa umbhalo (wokukhuluma noma obhalwayo)** • Uzilolonga ukufunda • Ufunda kuzwakale ephimisa, eshelela futhi ezethula ngemfanelo	**Ubhala umbiko olula wezindaba esebenzisa uhlaka** • Kumbandakanya ulwazi olufanele • Kumbandkanya umqondo ocacile nobalulekile • Uthuthukisa ulwazi ngendlela • Usebenzisa amagama okuhlanganisa futhi ahlele izigaba ngemfanelo • Usebenzisa ifomethi efanele • Usebenzisa uhlelo lolimi, uhlu lwamagama, isipelingi kanye nezimpawu zokubhala ezifanele **Wakha iphosta** • Kumbandakanya ulwazi olufanele kumbandakanya isithombe • Usebenzisa ifomethi efanele • Usebenzisa izimpawu zokwakheka ezifana nombala kanye nobukhuu obehlukene noma izinhlobo ezehlukene zobungako bokubhalwa kwezinhlamvu • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ngobunono, obonakalayo, noyidrafthi yokugcina.	**Ukusebenza ngamagama** • Sebenzisa isichazamazwi ukubheka isipelingi nencazelo yamagama • Amagama angena ohlwini oluthile lwamagama **Ukusebenza ngemisho** • Sebenzisa indlela yokubuza isib. Yini, nini, ngobani, yiphi, kanjani • Thuthukisa ukusebenza kwezihlanganiso ukhombisa isizathu nenhloso. • Qala ukusebenzisa izihlanganiso ukukhombisa ukukhetha (isib. Kungaba, … noma…). • Inkathi ezayo (isib. ‘Ngizombona kusasa’) • Yakha ngokuqonda inkathi yamanje eqhubekayo **Ulwazimagama engqikithini** • Amagama athathelwe embhalweni ofundwe ngokuhlanganyela noma ngawedwa

IBANGA LESI 6				
ITHEMU YESI – 4				
Amasonto	**Ukulalela nokukhuluma (okukhulunywa ngomlomo)**	**Ukufunda nokubukela**	**Ukubhala nokwethula**	**Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi**
37-38		**Ufunda futhi aqonde umbhalo wokusakazi obhaliwe**, isib. amaphosta kanye nezikhangiso • Ukulungiselela ukufunda uxoxisana ngezithombe • Uhumusha ulwazi • Uxoxisana ngenhloso yobhalo • Uxoxisna ngokunye ukusetshenziswa kolimi • Uphawula aphinde axoxisane ngezinto ezibonakala ngazo zokwakheka ezifana nombala kanye nobukhuu obehlukene noma izinhlobo ezehlukene zobungako bokubhalwa kwezinhlamvu • Uxoxisana ngokwendlalwa • Uqhathanisa imibhalo ehlukene, isib. amaphosta kanye nezikhangiso **Ucabanga ngombhalo ofundwe ngenkathi kufundwa ngokuzimela/ ngababili** • Wabelana ngemibono esembhalweni	**Usebenzisa inqubo yokubhala** • Ubhala umbhalo wokuqala • Uyabukeza • Uyafunda elungisa amaphutha • Ubhala umbhalo wokugcina • Wethula umbhalo wokugcina ngobunono, obonakalayo **Ubhala amagama kanye nezincazelo zawo kusichazamazwi sakhe** • Ubhala imisho esebenzisa amagama noma izincazelo ukukhombisa okushiwoyo, njll.	
39-40	**UKUHLOLA**			

INGXENYE 4: UMHLAHLANDLELA WOKUHLOLA

4.1 ISINGENISO

Ukuhlola kuyinqubo eqhubekayo ehleliwe yokuphawula, yokuqokelela nokuhumusha ulwazi ngokusebenza kwabafundi, kusetshenziswa izinhlobo ezahlukene zokuhlola. kufaka phakathi izinyathelo ezine: ukwakha kanye nokuqokelela ubufakazi bokuphunyelelwe; ukuhlola ubufakazi; ukUbhala okutholakele kanye nokusebenzisa ulwazi ukuqonda futhi ngaleyo ndlela nokusiza ekuthuthukeni komfundi ukuze enze ngcono enqubeni yokufunda nokufundisa.

ukuhlola kufanele kube ngokuhleliwe (Ukuhlolwa Kokufundiswa) kanye nokungahleliwe (Ukuhlola Kokufunda). Kuzo zombili lezi zimo ukuthokala kombono obuyayo ojwayelekie kufanele kuhlinzekwe kubafundi ukwenza ngcono ukufunda.

Impumelelo yabafundi boLimi Lokuqala Olungeziwe ilele ehuhlolweni okungahleliwe njalo kanye notholakala kombono kathisha njengoba besebenza ngemibhalo kanye nemisebenzi. Uhlelo lokufundisa lubeka okuqukethwe okudingekayo, amakhono namasu adingekayo ukufundisa nokufunda esikhathi esingunyaka. Lokhu yilokhu okuzohlolwa emazinga akhulayo entuthuko ukuqhubeka kwesikhathi)/Akukhona konke okufundiswa okudinga ukuba kuhlolwe ngokuhleliwe. Kodwa-ke, kubalulekile ukuthi ukuqhubeka kwabafundi kuhlolwe ngezinhlelo zokuhlolwa okuhleliwe nokungahleliwe, njengoba lokhu kunika ulwazi ukuhlela.

Amakhono abafundi okulalela, ukukhona kokomlomo, ikhono lokuphendula imibuzo, ukubamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni kanye namakhono okubhrekhoda okubhaliwe lapho kudingeka kufanele aqashelwe nsuku zonke.

Kubalulekile, futhi, ukuthi ukuqonda kwabafundi ukuthi bafunda kuhlolwe futhi hhayi nje ikhono labo lokubona nokuhumusha amagama. uhlolwa kokufunda kufanele ngaleyo ndlela kwenziwe njalo futhi futhi kubai nje into eyenzeka kanye. Ukuhlolwa kokufunda okuhleliiwe kufanele kugxile ekundeni kuzwakale kanye nakumisebenzi ezokusiza ukuthola ukuthi umfundi uqonde okuningi kangakanani, isibonelo, ukuxoxa futhi indaba noma ukuphendula imibuzo.

Ukuhlolwa komsebenzi obhaliwe kuzogxila kakhulu kwikhono lomfundi lokudlulisa umqondo, kanye nokuthi babhale kahle kangakanani, isibonelo, izinhlaka zolimi nokusetshenziswa okuhle, isipelingi nezimpawu zokubhala. konke ukuhlola kufanele kwazise ukuthi ukufundwa kolimi kuyinqubo kanye nokuthiabafundi angeke bakwazi ukukhiqiza umsebenzi ofanele ngokuphelele besaqala nje. Ngakho-ke, amazinga ahlukene enqubeni yokubhala kufanele ahlolwe.

Uma unikeza umsebenzi ohleliwe, kufanele kube nokugxila ekhonweni elithile, isibonelo, uKulalela Nokukhuluma, noma ukuFunda noma ukuBukela. Kodwa-ke. ngenxa yokuthi ukufunda ulimi kuyinqubo embandakanyayo, amakhono adlula kwelilodwa azosetshenziswa. izinhlaka zolimi kufanele zihlolwe ngokwendikimba. Kufanele kuqinisekiswe ukuthi ukuhlola akwenziwa kuphela njengomsebenzi obhalwayo, kodwa kuvumela umsebenzi wokwenza kanye nowomlomo ngokunjalo. Kubalulekile ukuhlola ukuthi abafundi baqonda ini futhi hhayi lokho abakugcina ezingqondweni nje, ngakho kuhlole amakhono ngokwendikimba ngokukhonekayo, isib. abafundi bangapela onke amagama ngemfanelo ngesikhathi sokuhlola ngoLwesihlanu, kodwa ingabebayakwazi ukusebenzisa lawo magama abawapele kahle uma bebhala/berekhoda izindaba zabo noma indaba.

Ukufundisa nokuhlola izilimi kufanele kuhlinzekele ukumbandakanywa kwabo bonke abafundi, futhi amasu kufanele atholwe okusiza bonke abafundi ukufinyelela noma ukukhiqiza imibhalo. Abanye abafundi abanezihibe bangekwazi ukufeza izinhlosio njengoba zethulwa okuNqubomgomo Yesitatimende soHlelo Lwezifundo.

4.2 UKUHLOLWA OKUNGAHLELIWE NOMA KWANSUKU ZONKE

Ukuhlolela ukufundisa kuhlose yokuqhubeka nokuqokela ulwazi ngokuphumelela komfundi okungasetshenziswa ukwenza ngcono ukufunda kwabo.

Ukuhlola okungahleliwe kunguqapha kwansuku zonke kokusebenza kwabafundi. lokhu kwenziwa ngokubheka, izingxonxo, ukubonisa ngokwenza, imihlangana kathisha nomfundi, ukuxhumana okungahleliwe ekilasini, njll. Ukuhlola okungahleliwe kungalula njengokuma ngesikhathi sesifundo ubheke abafundi noma uxoxisane nabafundi ngokuthi kuqhubeka kanjani ukufunda. Ukuhlolwa kokukhona kolimi kuzoba ngohlobo lokubheka, imisebenzi ebhaliwe, imisebenzi yomlomo kanye nokwethula, ukuhlola okubhaliwe, ukufunda kuzwakale kanye nezinye izinhlobo zokuhlola. Ukuhlola okungahlelelwe kufanele kusetshenziswe ukwazisa abafundi futhi nokunika ulwazi ukuhlelela ukufundis, kodwa kaudingi ukuba kurekhodwe. Kufanele kuthathwe njengomisebenzi yokufunda eyenziwa ekil;asini futhi kungadingeka ukuba usebenzise imisebenzi eminingi yokufunda ukuhlola ukusebenza kwabafundi ngokungahleliwe. Kwezinye izimo, ungahle udinge uhlobo oluthile lwemisebenzi yokuhlola ukukhuthaza abafundi bakho ukuba bafunde, efana nemibhalo yesipelingi yanjalo. abafundi nopma uthisha bangamaka lemisebenzi yokuhlola.

Kuyanconywa ukuthi usebenzise amasonto okuqala amabili ethemu uhlole ngokuphelele abafundi. Ufanele usebenzi le misebenzi enikwe emavikini okuqala amabili ezinhlelo zokufundisa ukwenza lokhu kuhlola. Lokhu kuzokuvumela ukuba uthole ukuthi yikuphi ukunaka abafundi bakho abazokudinga njengaba uqhubeka.

Ukuzihlola kanye nokuhlolana kontanga kufaka abafundi ekuhloleni. Kubalulekile njengoba lokhu kuvumela abafundi ukuba bafunde futhi babike ekusebenzeni kwabo. Umphumela wemisebenzi yokuhlola kwansukuzonke okungahlelelwe akuvamile ukuba irekhodwe ngaphandle uma uthisha efisa ukwenza njalo. Uthisha angahle afise ukugcina amarekhodi okungahleliwe okuthi umfundi ngamunye usebenza kanjani ezindaweni zesifundo futhi ukusiza ekuhleleni nasekuqinisekiseni ukuthi abafundi ngabanye baba nekhono elidingekayo nokuqonda. Umphumela wemisebenzi yokuhlolwa kwansuku zonke awunakwa ngesikhathi sokudluliselwa phambili noma ukukhishwa kwezitifiketi.

4.3 UKUHLOLA OKUHLELIWE

Yonke imisebenzi eyenza uhlelo lokuhlola oluhleliwe yonyaka ithathwa njengokuHlolwa Okuhleliwe. Imisebenzi yokuhlola okuhleliwe iyamakwa futhi irekhodwe nguthisha ukwenzela izinhloso zokuqhubekeka nokukhishwa kwezitifiketi. Yonke imisebenzi yokuHlola Okuhleliwe ifanele ilawulwe ukwenzela inhloso yokuqinisekiswa kwekhwalithi kanye nokuqinisekisa ukuthi amazinga afanele ayagcinwa.

Ukuhlola okuhleliwe kuhlinzeka uthisha ngendlela ehlelekile yokuhlola ukuthi abafundi baqhubeka kanjani ebangeni nakusifundo esithile. Izibonelo zokuhlola okuhleliwe zimbandkanya ukuhlola, izivivinyo, imisebenzi eyenziwayo, amaphrojekhthi, ukwethula ngomlomo, ukukhombisa (okufana nokuxoxa indaba futhi, ukumatanisa), imiboniso (ukulingisa), ama-eseyi, ukubamba iqhaza emisebenzi yomlomo (efana nezinkulomompendulwani, izingxoxo, ukuxoxisana), imisebenzi ebhalwayo (efana nokuqedela iwekhishidi, ukubhala izigaba noma ezinye izinhlobo zemibhalo), njll. Imisebenzi yokuhlola okuhleliwe iba yingxenye yokuHlelo Lokuhlola lonyaka ebangeni ngalinye nakusifundo. Imisebenzi yokuhlola okuhleliwe kufanele ingahloli ulwazi nekhono lomfundi kuphela, kodwa nokusetshenziswa kolimi kundikimba.

Ekuhloleni okuhleliwe, sebenzisa amamemorandamu, amarubhrikhi, izinhla zokuhlola kanye namazinga okukala kanye namanye amathuluzi okuhlola ukubheka, ukuhlola nokUbhala amazinga abafundi okuqonda nekhono. Khetha ithuluzi lokuhlola elifanele kakhulu uhlono lomsebenzi. Isibonelo, irubhrikhi ifaneleka kakhulu kunememorandamu

ezintweni ezibhaliwe zokuqamba. Imemorandamu ifaneleka kahle ekuhloleni isipelingi noma emsebenzini wokufundela ukuqonda.

Izidingo zokuhlola okuhleliwe Izidingo zoLimo Lokuqala Olwengeziwe zinjengoba zilandela.

- Imisebenzi emibili yokuhlola okuhleliwe kwIthemu yesi- kwamathathu okuqala kufane iqediwe bese owodwa kwIthemu yesi- lesine, okwenza izimba seyisikhombisa uma iziphelele ngonyaka. Le misebenzi eyisikhombisa yokuhlolwa okuhleliwe yenza ama-75% yemaki eliphelele loLimo Lokuqala Olwengeziwe emaBangeni 4, 5 no-6. Ileli maki lokuhlolwa okuhleliwe limbandakanya ukuhlolwa kwaphakathi nonyaka noma isivivinyo, uma sinikezwa.

- Umsebenzi wokuqala wokuhlolwa okuhleliwe ngethemu elilodwa ufanele wenziwe maphakathi nethemu. Umsebenzi wesibili wokuhlolwa okuhleliwe ngethemu ufanele wenziwe ngasekupheleni kwethemu.

- Kuzoba nesivivinyo ekupheleni konyaka iziba ngama-25% emaki.

- UMsebenzi wokuhlolwa ngakunye okuhleliwe wenziwa imisebenzi ehlola ukuLalela Nokukhuluma, ukuFunda, ukuBhala, kanye noKwakheka Nokusetshenziswa Kolimi, futhi kufanele kwenziwe esikhathi esiyizinsuku. Ukwakheka nokusetshenziswa kolimi kufanele kuhlolwe ngokwendikimba.

- Imisebenzi yokuhlola okuhleliwe kufanele ihlole izinto ezahlukene zamakhono olimi ukuze izinto ezibalulekile zihlolwe esikhathini sethemu kanye nonyaka. Qinisekisa ukuthi lezi zinto zihloliwe ngokungahleliwe futhi ulwazi oluvela kuthisha luya kumfundi lunikwa umfundi ngaphambu kokuba bahlolwe ngokuhleliwe.

- konke ukuhlola kweZinga Eliphakathi okwangaphakathi.

Izinhlobo zokuhlola ezisetshenziswayo kufanele zifaneleke ngokweminyaka nezinga lentuthuko. Ukwakheka kwale misebenzi kufanele wenze okuqukethwe yisifundo futhi kufake imisebenzi ehlukene eyakhelwe ukufeza izinhloso zesifundo

Imisebenzi yokuhlola okuhleliwe

Umsebenzi ngamunye wokuhlola okuhleliwe kufanelewenze lezi zinto ezilandelayo futhi ube nesikali esilandelayo. Kufanele ususelwe olwazini namakhono enziwe maphakathi nalelo themu. Izibonelo ezinikwe ngezansi zezenze ukufanekisa uhlobo lomsebenzi okufanele wenziwe. Sebenzisa izinhlelo zethemu zebanga ngalinye ukukhetha uhlobo lemisebenzi futhi ufake amakhono adingekayo engxenyeni ngayinye yomsebenzi wokuhlola okuhleliwe. Isibonelo, uma ufaka umsebenzi wokuqamba eBangeni 4, Ithemu yesi- 1 futhi ufuna abafundi ukuba babhale inkondlo, ungabalindela ukuba “babhale imisho engubude obulinganayo enemvumelwano”, njengoba lokho kuzobe kuyilokho obafundise kona. Uma usebenzisa umbhalo wolwazi kuthemu yokuqala, kuzofanele babhale basebenzise uhlaka efanele. Ngokunjalo ukuLalela Nokukhuluma, angeke ucele abafundi ukuba banikeze ngenkulumo emfushane eBangeni 4, Ithemu yesi- 1, njengoba lokho kufundiswa kamuva.

Izidingo zokwakha umsebezi zinikwe ngamaphesenti. Iapho amaphesenti engamashumi amabili ekhonweni lolimi ekhonjisiwe, kusho ukuthi ukwabiwa kokugcina kwamamaki alelo khono afanele abe ngamashumi amabili esamba futhi hhayi amamaku angamashumi amabili. izikole azibekelwanga inani lamamaki elabiwe lekhono lolimi inkani nje isikalo sekhono ngalinye sihlonishwa kwikhono ngalinye ngokuhambelana nephesenti elabiwe. Ebbangeni lesine isibonelo, ukuhlolwa kolwazi lolimi kungaba amamamiki ayishumi noma ngaphezulu, inkani nje isikalo zokugcina singadluli isikalo esikhonjisiwe.

Ezingxenyeni zokubhala zenqubo yokuhlela noma inqubo yonke kufanele okungenani ibe kanye ngethemu. Ubude bemibhalo yokubhala njengoba ikhonjisiwe kusiGaba 3.4 kufanele bulandelwe.

Ukwakheka komsebenzi wokuhlola ohleliwe (fat)		**Ibanga lesi- 4**	**Ibanga lesi- 5**	**Ibanga lesi-6**
UkuLalela nokukhuluma		**ama-40%**	**ama-40%**	**ama-40%**
Ukulalela	Umsebenzi wokukhombisa ukuthi umfundi ulalele futhi waqonda, isib. ulalela futhi alandele imiyalelo/ ulalela umbhale futhi aphendule imibuzo ngawo, ngomlomo noma ngokubhala	Ama-20%	Ama-20%	Ama-20%
Ukukhuluma	Umsebenzi wokukhombisa ukuthi umfundi angazethi ngomlomo, isib. ubamba iqhaza ezingxoxweni noma kuzinkumompendulwano/uxoxisana ngesihlokonoma ubhalo/inika imiyalelo noma izinkombandlela/uhaya inkondlo/unika inkulumo emfushane	Ama-20%	Ama-20%	Ama-20%
	NOMA			
	Umsebenzi owodwa noma ngaphezulu ohlanganisayo wokukhuluma ukhombisa ukukhona ukuqonda nolimi lokuzethula ngomlomo, isib. ulalela aphinde axoxe futhi ngendaba/ulalela ukukhuluma aphinde axoxisane ngakho	ama-40%	ama-40%	ama-40%
Ukufunda		**Ama-30%**	**Ama-30%**	**Ama-30%**
Ukufunda kuzwakale	Umsebenzi ukhombisa ukuthi umfundi ufunda ageleze, isib. ufunda kuzwakale umbhalo ojwayelekile (Ithemu yesi- 1 ukuya ku-4)/ufunda kuzwakale umbhalo ongajwayelekile (Ithemu yesi- 3 no-4). Lokhu kufaka phakathi imibuzo emibalwa ukuthola ukuthi ingabe umfundi uqondile okade kufundwa.	Ama-10%	Ama-10%	Ama-10%
Ukufundela ukuqonda	Imisebenzi emibili noma ngaphezulu ukukhombisa ukuthi umfundi uyakwazi ukuqonda okushiwo umbhalo futhi uyazibona izimpawu zombhalo, isib. uphendula imibuzo/uxoxa indaba futhi/uzenzela esakhe isiphetho/unikeza ukufingqa/ubeka umbono wakhe/uchaza izimpawu zombhalo. Umbhalo osetshenizswayo ungaba isiqeshana esifushane noma imibhalo yokufunda okweluliwe ngenkathi yokufunda ngokuzimela. Umsebenzi kufanele ufanele uhlobo lombhalo olukhethiwe.	Ama-20%	Ama-20%	Ama-20%
Ukubhala		**ama-20%**	**ama-20%**	**ama-20%**
Ukubhala kokuziqambela	umsebenzi owodwa ukukhombisa ukuthi umfundi uyakwazi ukwethula imiqondo ngokubhala, isib. ubhala uhlobo oluthile lokuqamba (olufana nendaba/ inkondlo) noma ingxenye yakho noma imisho. Umsebenzi kufanele ukhombise ukusetshenziswa kwezinhlaka zolimi endikimbeni.	Ama-10%	Ama-10%	Ama-10%
Ukubhala okuqukethe ulwazi/ kokushintshiselana	Umsebenzi owodwa ukukhombisa ukuthi umfundi uyakwazi ukunikeza ulwazi, isib. ubhala uhlobo oluthile lombhalo wasenhlalweni noma lokusebenza (olufana nombiko/iphosta/ukufakela amagama emfanisweni/imisho) noma ingxenye yawo. Umsebenzi kufanele ukhombise ukusetshenziswa kwezinhlaka zolimi endikimbeni.	Ama-10%	Ama-10%	Ama-10%

IZAKHIWO NEZIMISO ZOLIMI		**Ama-10%**	**Ama-10%**	**Ama-10%**
Ukusetsheniswa kolimi okuhleliwe	Imisebenzi emibili noma ngaphezulu ukukhombisa ukuthi umfundi unolwazi lwezinhlaka zolimi kanye nokusetshenziswa kwazo, isib. izimapwu zokubhala ezifanele/isipelingi/ukusetshenziswa kwezingcezu zenkulumo ezifanele	Ama-10%	Ama-10%	Ama-10%
Isamba samaphesenti somsebenzi ngamunye		**100%**	**100%**	**100%**

4.4 UHLELO LOKUHLOLA

UHlelo Lokuhlola lwakhele ukuba lwelule imisebenzi yokuhlola okuhleliwe kuzo zonke izifundo esikoleni kulo lonke Ithemu yesi-. Uhlelo lokuhlola kufanele lwenziwe yisikole lukhombe izinsuku ukuhlola okuzokwenziwa ngazo

4.4.1 Izidingo ngokufingqiwe

Lelithebula elilandelayo linikeza izidingo zohlelo lokuhlola ngokufingqiwe ithemu ngayinye ezimini zokwengeza zesibili:

Ithebula 4.1: amabanga 4 – 6 (UWO> Umsebenzi Wokuhlola Ohlelekile / Formal Assessment Task)

	ITHEMU YOKU- 1	**ITHEMU YESI- 2**		**ITHEMU YESI- 3**	**ITHEMU YESI- 4**	
IBANGA LESI-4	UWO 1	UWO 2	UWO 3/ Isivivinyo samaphakathi	UWO 4	UWO 5	Isivivinyo sokuphela konyaka
IBANGA LESI-5	UWO 1	UWO 2	UWO 3/ Isivivinyo samaphakathi	UWO 4	UWO 5	Isivivinyo sokuphela konyaka
IBANGA LESI-5	UWO 1	UWO 2	UWO 3/ Isivivinyo samaphakathi	UWO 4	UWO 5	Isivivinyo sokuphela konyaka
Ukwakheka kwemaki lokugcina	Ukuhlolwa okuqhubekayo ama-75%					Isivivinyo sokuphela konyaka – 25%

4.4.2 Izivivinyo

Okuqukethwe kokuphela konyaka kufanele kuthathelwe kumsebenzi owenziwe phakathi nonyaka kanti kufanele kube umsebenzi okhethekile ozokwenza abafundi bakwazi ukukhombisa ukulungele ukubhekana nomsebenzi ngonyaka olandelayo

- Uhlolo kufanele lube nalokhu okulandelayo:
- Ukufunda indaba, kufaka umsebenzi wolwazimagama
- Ukubhala umbhalo omfishane wokuziqambela, kusetshenziswa uhlelo olufanele, izimpawu zokubhala nesipelingi
- Ukubhalwa kombhalo omfishane wokuvumelana, kufaka ukusetshenziswa kohlelo olufanele, izimpawu zokubhala nesipelingi
- Ulwazi nokuqonda uhlelo, izimpawu zokubhala nesipelingi
- Amakhono okulalela nokukhuluma angeke kuhlolwe njengengxenye yokuhlola njengoba lokhu kubonakala emva kwesikhathi eside uma kuhlolwa

Ukukalwa kwamamaki okuhlola kumi kanje:

	Ibanga 4	**Ibanga 5**	**Ibanga 6**
Ukufunda isifundo sokuqondisisa	60%	60%	50%
ukubhala	25%	25%	35%
Izakhiwo nezimiso zolimi	15%	15%	15%
Isamba samaphesenti	100%	100%	100%

4.5 UKUQOPHA NOKUBIKA

UkUbhala yinqubo lapho uthisha ebhala phansi izinga lokusebenza komfundi kumsebenzi othile. Kukhombisa ukuqhukeka komfundi ekutholeni ulwazi njengoba kumiswe yiNqubomgomo Yesitatimende soHlelo Lwezifundo. Amarekhodi okusebenza komfundi kufanele ahlinzeke ngobufakazi bokuthuthuka komqondo womfundi ebangeni kanye nokulunela kwakhe ukuqhubekela kanye nokudluliselwa kwelinye IBANGA LESI-. Amrekhodi okusebenza kwabafundi kufanele asetshenziselwe ukuqinisekisa ukuqhubeka okwenziwe ngothisha nabafundi enqubeni yokufundisa nokufunda.

Ukubika kuyinqubo yokudlulisela ukusebenza komfundi kubafundi, abazali, isikole kanye nabanye oabanotho. Ukusebenza komfundi kungabikwa ngezindlela eziningi. Lezi zindlela zimbandakanya ikhadi lokubika, imihlangano yabazali, isinzuku zokuvakashela isikole, imihlangana phakathi kukathisha nomzali, ukushaya izincingo, izincwadi, amanyuziletha ekilasi noma esikole, njll. Othisha kuwo onke amazinga babika ngamaphesenti bewaqhathanisa nesifundo. Amazinga ayisikhombisa achaziwe echazelwa isufundo ngasinye kumaBanga R - 12. Amazinga ahlukene okuphumelela kanye nambhande amaphesenti ahambisana nawo kubonisiwe kwiThebula elingezansi.

AMAKHODI NAMAPHESENTI OKUBHALA NOKUBIKA

IKHODI YOKUBEKA NGEZINGA	UKUCHAZWA KOKUFANELEKA	AMAPHESENTI
Lesi-7	Uphumelele ngamalengiso	80 – 100
Lesi-6	Uphumelele kahle kakhulu	70 – 79
Lesi-5	Uphumelele kahle	60 – 69
Lesi-4	Uphumelele ngokwanele	50 – 59
Lesi-3	Uphumelele	40 – 49
Lesi-2	Uphumelele ngokungagculisi	30 – 39
Loku-1	Akaphumelelanga	0 - 29

Qaphela: Isikalo samaphusu ayisikhombisa kufanele sibe nezichazi ezicacile ezinika ulwazi olwanele lezinga ngalinye.

Uthisha uzorekhoda amamaki okuyiwona ewaqhathanisa nomsebenzi esebenzi ishidi lokurekhada; futhi arekhode amaphesenti ewaqhqthanisa nesifundo kumakhadi okubika abafundi.

4.6 UKUQINISEKISWA KWEZINGA LOMSEBENZI WOKUHLOLA

Ukulawula kusho inquboyokuqinisekisa ukuthi imisebenzi yokuhla ayenzeleli, ifanele futhi ithembekile. Ukulawula kufanele kwenziwe emazingeni esikole, esifunda, esifundazwe nozwelonke. Izinqubo eziphelele nezifanele zokulawula kufanele zibe khona ukuze kuqinisekiswe ikhwalithi kukho konke ukuhklolwa kwezifundo.

Abalawuli ezingeni lesikole kufanele babeke imibono ngekhwalithi ukuze ukuqinisekiswe ukuthi izinqubo zokuhlola esikoleni zenziwa ngcono. ukulawula kungke kube nje isenzo sokuqapha ukuhlola ukuthi inani elifanele lomsebenzi lenziwe noma imemorandamu isetshenziswe kahle. Ezilimini kusho ukuthi umlawuli uzonika umbono omuhle, kokunye, ngezinga lemibuzo ekuhlolweni kokuqonda; ukuvama kokubhala okweluliwe; ikhwalithi yamathuluzi okuhlola kanye namathuba okuthuthuka anikezwayo, kanye nokusebenza kukathisha ngezincwadi zokusebenzela zabafundi kanye nobufakazi bokusebenza komfundi.

Inqubo yokulawula kufanele iqinisekise ukuthi ukubeka ngamazinga okunikeziwe kuyahambelana kuwo onke amakilasi ebanga, kanye nawo omke amabanga ezinga. Isibonelo, izinga 3 elinikwe nguthisha oyedwa kufanele limele izinga elifanayo lwekhono nolwazi njezinga elifana elinikwe ngomunye uthisha. Ngakho-ke kubalulekile ukuba iziNhloko Zesifundo zilawule njalo.

4.7 OKUJWAYELEKILE

Lo mqulu kumele ufundwe umbandakanywa nale miqulu eminye elandelayo:

4.7.1 *National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement Grades R – 12*; and

4.7.2 The policy document, *National Protocol for Assessment Grades R – 12.*

IZINCAZELO ZAMAGAMA

I - akhronimi/igamamfingqwa - igama eliphimisekayo elakhiwa ngokusebenzisa uhlamvu/izinhlamvu zokuqala zalelo gama noma lowo mushwana (e.g. uTHAFUZWE).

ULimi lokwEngeza (bheka **noLimi LwaseKhaya) -** ulimi olufundwayo kwengezwa kolwasekhaya lomfundi.

Ubulimininingi obengezayo - nxa umuntu efunda ulimi (noma izilimi) ukwengeza olimini lwakhe lwasekhaya. Lolu limi aluthathi isikhundla solimi lwasekhaya kodwa lufundwa kanye nalo. Ohlelweni lokufunda ubulimininingi obengeziwe, ULimi LwaseKhaya liyaqiniswa lugcinwe, ngenkathi olunye ulimi olufundwayo luthathwa njengolimi olwengezwayo nje (isib. Zonke izilimi ezengeziwe, kumbandakanya uLimi lokuFunda nokuFundisa, zifundiswa zihambisana noLimi lwasEkhaya, kodwa azithathi isikhundla salo.

Amagama asho okufanayo - (Njengoba eqhathaniswa nalawo asho okuphikisanayo), amagama amqondofana.

I - anekhdothi - lokhu yindatshana ngesehlakalo esake senzeka empilweni yokhulumayo, exoxwa kuphela ngenhloso yokucacisa okuthile noma - ke ukujabulisa, ukuhlekisa noma ukuqgamisa umlingiswa othile.

Amagama aphikisanayo - yigama eliphikisa elinye kulolo limi (isib. khala - hleka) ukufaneleka - ulimi lusuke lufanelekile uma lusetshenziswe ngendlela ehambisana nesimo

Ukuhlola - indlela ehlelekile neqhubekayo yokuthola ulwazi ngamakhono omfundi okwenzeka ngezindlela ezehlukene.

Umsebenzi wokuhlola – umsebenzi osetshenziselwa ukuhlola abafundi onenani elithize lemisetshenzana noma izingxenye

Isihloko esichaza indaba - lesi yisihloko noma ukuphawula esinanyekwe ngenhla noma ngezansi kwe - athikili, kwesithombe njll.

Ifanankamisa - 1. lisho ukuphinda (ngokuvamile)**,** umsindo wonkamisa abafanayo emagameni amabili noma ngaphezulu (Isib. Yashosholoza intinginono ewumcondo).

Izethameli - (1). Umfundi, umlaleli, umbukeli oqondiwe umbhalo othize, lapho kwenziwa uhlaka lwesiqeshana esilotshwayo izikhulumi/abalobi kumele bacabange ngenhloso nezethameli lapho bekhetha uhlobo lokubhalwayo. (2) empeleni izethameli yilabo bantu abeze ukuzobukela umdlalo noma umculo.

Imibhalo eyiqiniso - imibhalo ekwaziyo ukuhambisana nempilo ephilwayo, nokwenzeka kwezinto. (Isib. amaphephabhuku, ama - athikili, amaphephandaba, okuqoshiwe emsakazweni nakumabonakude, izikhangiso, amalebuli emikhiqizo, amabhrosha okuvakasha, amafomu akwahulumeni, izibonelo zezincwadi zangempela).

Ukuchema - (1) Umkhuba wokuthanda into noma umbono ngaphezu komunye, lokho bese kuholela ekuthini umuntu angabe esakwazi ukuthatha isahlulelo esifanele.

Isihloko esichaza indaba - lesi yisihloko noma ukuphawula esinanyekwe ngenhla noma ngezansi kwe - athikili, kwesithombe njll.

Isisusa - (bheka **nomphumela) -** yilokho okudala udweshu nesimo.

Ukucacisa - ukwenza ukuthi umqondo wetheksthi uzwakale kofundayo.

Umushwana - isibonelo “indoda eyayigqoke ihembe elibomvu yabaleka” Umushwana oyinhloko - “indoda yabaleka”. Amagama athi “ eyayigqoke ihembe elibomvu”, umushwana okhonzile. Awukwazi ukuzimela wodwa nanxa sikhona isenzo kuwona. Imishwana ekhonzile iqala ngesihlanganiso (uma kuwumushwana okhonzile omele isizathu). Eminye imishwana ekhonzile iqala ngezivumelwano zesichasiso; isib. (**e**.) “**e**yayigqoke… ” (u “ **e** ” isiv. sesibaluli). Isihlanganiso sihlanganisa umushwana nomusho, siphinde sihlanganise imisho emibili ephelele.

Uvuthondaba –ingxenye ejabulisayo, ephumelelayo noma esemqoka yendaba.lengxenye esemqoka ayichazi isiphetho.

Imibuzo evalekile – imibuzo edinga impendulo eqondile. Isibonelo, ‘Uyalithanda itiye?’ Impendulo kumele kube ‘yebo’ noma ‘cha’. ‘Uneminyaka emingakhi?’ Impendulo kumele kube, isib. ‘Ishumi’.

Ukuzwakala - (1) ikhono lokwazi ukuqonda nokweneka ngohlelo izindaba, yikho okwenza ubudlelwano obuhlanganisa kahle imibono ukuze isigaba sinikeze umqondo ozwakalayo nobumbene. (2) Kungabuye kusho ukuba nolwazi olwenele lohlelo, ukuze kwedluliswe kahle umlayezo, noma - ke isakhiwo esihle somusho. Uma uhlelo luxovekile, umusho awuzwakali kahle.

Ukulandelana - ukuhlanganiswa kwemisho noma izigaba ngezihlanganiso, izabizwana nokuphindaphinda.

Fanisa (bheka no - qhathanisa) - ukubheka lokho okwenza ukuthi izinto zifane.

Udweshu - ukungqubuzana noma ukwehluka kwemibono yabalingiswa endabeni kanye nezimo zabo; udweshu emibhalweni lungabangwa nawukungqubuzana kwezifiso noma lokho umuntu akwazisayo noma akukhonzile.

Isihlanganiso - igama elisetshenziswa ukuhlanganisa imisho (Isib. UNoxolo ungumdlali ovelele esikoleni futhi uzimisele nasezifundweni zakhe).

Amaklishe - amagama asetshenziswa ngokweqile, afakwe nje noma kungasafanele (Isib. Izingane uma zikhuluma ziyathanda ukuphindaphinda la magama: “Kusho ukuthi..., “ nalapho kungasadingekile).

Izimo - ngaso sonke isikhathi, imibhalo ibhalwa isetshenziswe ezimweni ezithile, isimo simbandakanya indawo eyendlalekile kanye neqoqekile, kuhambisana nezimo zasekuhlaleni, isikompilo kanye nezepolitiki, isimo singabuye sisho lokhu okuza kuqala noma ngemuva kwegama noma kombhalo.

Izinkomba kwingqikithi –ukusetshenziswa kwamagama azungeze igama elingaziwa ukuthola okushiwo igama. lelisu lokufunda lingafundisa ngokuhlanganyela nolwazimagama.

Ukufanisa (bheka **nokuqhathanisa**) - ukubheka indlela izinto ezehluke ngayo.

Izimiso - imithetho nemikhuba eyamukelekile olimini. Ezinye izimiso ziyasiza ukwedlulisa umlayezo (isib. imithetho yohlelo, izimpawu zokukhuluma, uhlobo oluthile lokubhala izinhlamvu nosonhlamvukazi.); ezinye zisiza ekwethuleni okuphethwe (isib. okuqukethwe, isimo sombhalo, izihloko, izenezezelo, amashadi, izihloko ezichaza indaba, izinhlu, izithombe nezinamba, ezinye izimiso zikhombisa amaphethini olimi asaphenduka umthetho okumele ulandelwe (isib. ukubingelela nokunye).

Ukuhlola okuqhubekayo - ukuhlola imisebenzi yabafundi okwenziwa kusukela unyaka uqala uze uyophela.

Ukuqwashisa ngobumqoka bolimi - ngokuhlolisisa ukuthi umqondo wakhiwa kanjani, ukukhumbula amandla obudlelwano obukhona phakathi kwezilimi, kwenza umfundi aqine angavumi ukukhohliseka, futhi asebenzise ulimi ngokuqaphela.

Inkulumo - mpikiswano - lapha amaqembu amabili ayaqophisana. Bonke bahlose ukuheha abehlulelayo kanye nezethameli ukuthi icala labo yilo elizwakala kangcono kunalelo lelinye iqembu.

Incazelo eqondile (bheka **negudliselayo**) – incazelo eqondile yegama.

Igama elisuselwe kwelinye - leli yigama elisuselwe kwelinye, noma emsukeni; ngokwejwayelekile lakhiwa ngokuphongoza nangokujobelela izakhi

Ulimi lwesifunda/lwesigodi - ulimi olusetshenziswa ngumphakathi othile, luyehluka kwezinye izinhlobo zalo lona lolo limi ngokwamagama, isakhiwo nokuphinyiswa kwamagama.

Isakhiwo esisusa usinga - (1) indlela elandela izwi nezwi okubhalwa ngayo imidlalo. (2) ukuhleleka kwesakhiwo izigcawu nezinkundla, abadlali kanye nezimpawu zolimi emdlalweni.

Ukwakha isiphetho – ukusebenzisa umkhondo obhaliwe noma obukwayo ukuthola lokho okungagagulwanga embhalweni.

Ukulungisa amaphutha - inqubo yokuphindaphinda ubhala uhlaka lwethexsthi, kuhlangene nokulungisa uhlelo kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi, izimpawu zokubhala, ukulungisa isipelingi, ubuye ubheke nokubhala imibono ngendlela ezwakalayo nesakhiwo silandelane kahle.

Umphumela (bheka **isisusa**) - umphumela wesehlakalo noma isimo.

Ulimi oluthinta imizwa - ulimi oluvusa imizwa kolalele/kofundayo.

Umlayezo osobala (uma uqhathaniswa **nocashile**) - umlayezo oqondile nosobala.

Hluza: nikeza uvo lwakho, thatha isinqumo, yakha imibono ngokufundile.

Izifengqo (njengoba kuqhathaniswa nolimi olubheka ukulandelana nje kwamagama) - amagama noma imishwana esetshenziswa ngendlela engabeki izinto obala (isib. isifaniso, isenzasamuntu, isingathekiso njalonjalo).

Ukugeleza - leli yigama elathathelwa ekugelezeni komfula elisho ukunamathelana nokulandelana okunikeza ulimi ubunjalo balo ngokwemvelo, ukusetshenziswa nokuhunyushwa kwalo kalula.

Inkundla - iqembu lingakhuluma noma liqophisane nelinye lakwesinye isikole, noma ekilasini, ngokwehlukanisa abafundi ngamaqembu amane, kube yilowo nalowo akhulume ngengxenye ethile yesihloko. Owahlulelayo usezobheka ukuthi yiliphi eliphuma phambili.

Izinhlobo zemibhalo - imbhalo yehlukaniswa ngezinhlobo zawo; kungaba inoveli, umdlalo, izinkondlo, incwadi yomsebenzi noma incwadi yobungani

Ukukhuluma ngezitho zomzimba - kulapho okhulumayo esesebenzisa ubuso noma isitho esithile somzimba ukucacisa lokho akushoyo (isib. anganqekuzisa ikhanda ekhombisa ukuvumelana nokushiwoyo).

Umbhalomdwebo - umbhalo owethulwe ngemidwebo (ukudweba noma ukubumba okuthile).

Ukufunda okuholwayo – umhlangano weqembu wokufunda lapho bonke abafundi besezingeni elifanayo uthisha ngokufunda ukufunda ukuze kuye ngokukhula ukuzimela abafundi

Ukubhala okuholwayo –kufaka umuntu oyedwa noma amaqembu amancane abafundi bebhala izinhlobo ezihlukene zemibhalo emuva kwesifundo esifishane esenziwe nguthisha ngezinhlaka zokubhala njenge: simo, izimpawu zokukhanyisa, ukusetshenziswa kolimi noma isipelingi

Imibuzo esezingeni eliphezulu – imibuzo edinga ukuthi umfundi ahlanganise ulwazi oluvela ezingxenyeni ezihlukene zombhalo (sbi. Ukuhlela umqondo), ukucabangela (isib. Ukuthola lokho okungagagulwanga), ukuhlolisisa okwenzekile (sib. Nika umbono) kanye/noma ukuncoma umbhalo (isib. Shono ukuthi ukuthandile noma awukuthandanga nokuthi kungani)

ULimi LwaseKhaya (bheka **noLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza**) - ulimi olufundwa yingane ngokulingisa ekhaya, ulimi esicabanga ngalo.

Omabizwafane – amagama abizwa, apelwe ngendlela efanayo kodwa achaza okuhlukene (isib. inyanga')

Umfanekiso –isithombe noma okumele into ethile

Umfanekiso - mqondo - amagama, imishwana nemisho eyakha izithombe engqondweni; isib. Isifaniso, isingathekiso, nesenzasamuntu.

Okushiwoyo (uma kuqhathaniswa **nokucacisiwe**) yilokho okuqondiwe ethexsthini kodwa kube kungabekiwe kwagqama.

Okusobala (**uma kuqhathaniswa nokufihlekile**) - ukubeka inkulumo ngendlela elula neqondile kusetshenziswa amagama njengoba enjalo.

Uhlanganisa – lo umthetho wemfundo othi umuntu unelungelo lokufunda. Okuncane okudingekayo kubafundi bonke kucacisiwe ukuze labo abanezidingo ezingavamile, izidingo ngokwemizwa nangokomzimba balungiselelwe.

Izinga lokufunda ngokuzimela – izinga lapho umfundi engafunda umbhalo ngama-95% ngokuyikho (isib. Kungabi namaphutha angaphezu kwelilodwa emagameni angama-20 afundiwe).

Ukucabangela - ukusebenzisa umkhondo obhaliwe noma obukwayo ukuthola lokho okungagagulwanga embhalweni.

Ukuhlongoza - ukuqala ukwenza into (isib. ukuqala ingxoxo)

Ukuxoxisana kwababili **-** umsebenzi wokuqoqa ulwazi noma ingxoxo yabantu yobuso nobuso ngenhloso ethile.

Ubuviyoviyo - (1) (ukusho ngephimbo lokucula) - iphethini lephimbo lenkulumo elibonisa izakhiwo zohlelo njengemisho nemishwana. (2) Lokhu kuphinda kusize ukwehlukanisa phakathi kwesitatimende nombuzo, kuveze nemizwa nesimo sokhulumayo.

Izindlela ezahlukene zokusetshenziswa kolimi - lokhu kwenzeka uma kukuncane kakhulu okuzuziwe olimini maqondana nolwazimagama, ukwakhekha nokuphinyiswa kwawo, lokhu - ke kuyehluka ngokwezindawo lapho ulimi lukhulunywa khona.

Amalitheresi - izinhlobo ezehlukene zemibhalo (isib. ehlolisisayo, ebukwayo, amagrafu).

Ukwazi ukufunda nokubhala - ikhono lokwazi ukufunda nokubhala nokusebenzisa ulwazi ezimweni nangezinhloso ezehlukene, nokubhalela izinhloso ezehlukene. Ukwazi ukuguqula Imibhalo ebhalwe ngamagama angejwayelekile kube ajwayelekile, ukuze umuntu oqonde ngendawo aphila kuyo.

Incazelo eqondile (bheka **negudliselayo) -** incazelo yegama ngokulandelana kwamazwi

Imibuzo eszingeni eliphansi – imibuzo efuna umfundi akhumbule imininingwane, isib.obani abalingiswa abasemqoka endabeni? Ubani igama lomlingiswa osemqoka ?

Ulimi olukhohlisayo - ulimi olunamandla lokuthi umuntu akholwe futhi ebe engaboni ukuthi uyakhohliswa, isib. Inkulumo yezepolitiki, inkulumo yokuthengisa, isikhangiso njll.

Ulimi lwemibhalo - ulimi olusetshenziswa lapho kukhulunywa ngemibhalo kumbandakanya amagama afana nesimo, isitayela, isakhiwo nenkulumompendulwano.

Amasu obuciko bokukhuluma - amasu afana nokusebenzisa ikhefu, ukuphindaphinda okusetshenziswa isikhulumi sibeke inkulumo ngendlela ezwakalayo nevumisayo. Amanye amasu kungaba akhohlisayo, ukuze umuntu avumelame nawe.

Imibhalo esebenzisa izinhlobo eziningi zokuxhumana - izinhlobo zezilinganiso okungaba ezibhaliwe, ezibonwayo, imisindo amavidiyo njll.

Ifuzamsindo - lapha kusetshenziswa igama elimsindo walo ufana nomsindo lowo uchazwayo. Lilingisa umsindo owenziwa yinto ethile ephilayo noma engaphili. Lowo umsindo ofuze umsindo owenziwa enye into (Isib. UMelusi wavuswa ubugodlogodlo besitmela).

Umoya - isimo somoya embhalweni, ukhombisa imizwa noma isimo senqondo yomlingiswa, kuphinda kusho nesimo esivezwa amatheksthi abonwayo, azwakalayo kanye nalawo esebenzisa izinhlobo eziningi zokuxhumana.

Ifonti - uhlobo nobungako bezinhlamvu ezisetshenziswa lapho kubhalwa ngomshini (isib. I - 12pt (ubungako) iTimes New Roman (uhlobo nesitayela sezinhlamvu).

Ukulanda - ukusho izehlakalo ezihlangene ezikhulunywayo noma ezibhaliwe zishiwo ngokulandelana kwazo, endabeni.

Isifanekiso - (1). ukuthola ukufana ezintweni ezibukeka zihlukile. (2) ukuthola ukufana ezintweni ezibukeka zihlukile, indlela yokuchaza okuthile, kodwa akusibona ubufakazi. Qaphela isifanekiso okungesona. Kumele kube nokuqondana okucacile phakathi kwento echazwayo kanye nemininingwane yaleyo okufanekiswa nayo.

Indida - ukubeka inkulumo ngendlela ephicayo engqondweni.

Imibuzo evulelekile – imibuzo engaphendulwa ngezindlela ezihlukene; umfundi kufanele aphendule imibuzo ngawakhe amagama.Isibonelo, ucabanga ukuthi kungani umfana ebalekile? Ucabanga ukuthi bokumele enze njani?

Okzimoroni - ukusetshenziswa kwamazwi ndawonye amqondo wawo uphikisanayo, asetshenziswa ngehloso yokuveza okuthile, ngokwejwayelekile asetshenziswa nezichasiso ezichaza ibizo elimumethe umqondo oliphikisayo. (Isib. UJabulani ukhathazwa ubugqili benkululeko).

Izingxoxo zamapheneli - kwakhiwa amaqembu azoxoxisana ngesihloko, kuphendulwe imibuzo ngomsebenzi.

Isihlonipho - igama elisetshenziswa endaweni yelinye elihlambalazayo. (Isib. Ukudakwa - ukusutha, ukuhlanza - ukubuyisa).

Izwi lomxoxi - yizwi lomuntu oxoxa indaba (isib. kuyabonakala uma kungumuntu wokuqala “ngi…” okunguyena mlingiswa endabeni, noma umuntu wesithathu lapho umxoxi ekhuluma ngo “u…”, no “ba…”.

Isingathekiso - ukukhuluma ngokufanekisa izinto ezingafani ubiza into ngenye (Isib. USinenhlanhla akamuhle yilanga liphuma).

Ukuhalamuza - Ukufunda ngesivinini esikhulu, ukha phezulu, ufunda izihloko ngenhloso yokuthola masishane ukuthi kuthiwani.

Ukufunisela - ukusho okuqondiwe kodwa kungacacisiwe etheksthini, uze usho nokuthi kungahle kwenzekeni ngemuva kwalokho.

Ukucwasana - ukungabekezelelani nokwahlulela umuntu noma iqembu labantu, umbono noma umbango.

Ukuzwakala - ukukhipha izwi ngokukhulumela phezulu, ngendlela ezwakalayo, ecacile nexhumana kahle nezethameli.

Ukushicilela– uma abafundi beshicilela umsebenzi wabo, bawenza waziwe ngokwabelana ngawo, isib. Ngokuwunika uthisha, ngokuwuphanyeka odongeni noma kwibhodi yezaziso.

Uteku - ukudlala ngamagama aphimiseka ngokufanayo ukuze kuhlekwe noma ukwethula izimo nezinto ngendlela ehlekisayo nekitazayo.

Irejista - ukusetshenziswa kwamagama ehlukene, isitayela, uhlelo iphimbo ithoni ezimweni ezihlukene (isib. imiqulu yakomkhulu ibhalwa kusetshenziswa irejista esemthethweni, ebekelwe izimiso).

Ukubika - (okuhlelekile nokungahlelekile), ukunikeza ulande ngokwenzekile (isib. ngengozi eyenzeke ubhekile).

Ukuphinda ufunde - ukuphinda ufunde yisu elipha nofundayo ithuba lokuthi agcine eseqonda lokho okubhalwe etheksthini.

Ukuphinda usho - leli yisu lokufunda lapho umfundi exoxa futhi, afingqe umqondo wesahluko noma wesiqephu, angakwenza ngomlomo noma ngokubhala.

Umkhondosimo - ukusetshenziswa kwegama elincike kulelo elingaziwa ukuze kufuniselwe umqondo. Leli lisu lokufunda lingasetshenziswa kanye nesifundo solwazimagama.

Umgqumo - amagama noma imigqa esebenzisa ukuvumelana kwephimbo ekugcineni kwemigqa.

Ukubhuqa - inkulumo esebenzisa amazwi aziswana ngenhloso yokucasula noma yokuhlekisa ngomuntu.

Umbhinqo - ukusebenzisa amazwi achaza okuthile kepha kube kuqondwe okuphambene nawo. Kusuke kusetshenziswe amazwi okuncoma kuqondwe ukugxeka (Isib. Kuyabonakala ukuthi bekuhlala inono kule ndlu yiko kungcolile: kuqondwe ukuthi bekuhlala inuku).

Ukufunda ngokukha phezulu - ukuhambisa embhalweni ukuze uthole imininingwane ebalulekile yokwesekela (isib. ukufunda ngokushesha umqulu wamagama nezinombolo zezingcingo).

Ukufunda ngokuhlanganyela – umsebenzi lapho abafundi befunda ngokuhlanganyela umbhalo okhulisiwe nothisha.lesi isifundo sekilasi lonke.umbhalo osetshenziswayo uqonde iqembu eliphezulu ekilasini.abanye abafundi bazoba sezingeni lokulalela, abanye bazobe beqala ukufunda kanti abaningi bazobe befunda ngokuphelele. lombhalo uzosetshenziswa izinsuku eziningana.njalo ngosuku uthisha uzokhetha okusha okuzogxilwa kuko. umbhalo usetshenziselwa ukwethula isimo sombhalo, imisindo, ukusetshenziswa kolimi kanye namakhono okufunda engqikithini..

Isifaniso - lapha kuqhathaniswa izinto ezimbili ezingafani ngoba kukhona okuthile okunobudlelwane phakathi kwazo. Sandulelwa yizakhi zokufanisa o - njenga -, fana, kuhle, okwe -, - sa - (UThuthukile muhle kuhle kwelanga liphuma).

Ukufunda ngokushesha - ukufunda umbhalo ngesivivinini esikhulu ukuze kutholakale umqondo osemqoka (isib. ukufunda izihloko, izingeniso nezigaba zokuqala zephephandaba ukuze wazi izindaba ezisemqoka).

Inkolelo engaguquki - lena yinkolelo esezimpandeni maqondana neqhaza okumele libanjwe ngumuntu othile.

Icebo - indlela ethile yokwenza noma yokulungiselela ukuxazulula inkinga.

ukugcizelela (egameni noma emushweni) – ukugcizelela ilunga elithize egameni noma igama emushweni.e

Isitayela - indlela umbhali ahlela ngayo amagama ukuze afeze izinhloso ezithile. Isitayela sihlanganisa ubunjalo bombhali nombono afuna ukuwubeka. La malungiselelo ambandakanya ukukhethwa kwamagama wumbhali kanye nezakhiwo nobungako bemisho, iphimbo, nokusetshenziswa kombhinqo.

Uphawu - igama elithatha noma limela indawo yenye into

Umabizwafane - yigama elibhalwa ngekufana liphinyiswe ngokufana, kodwa lisho izinto ezingefani. (isib. **Ibala** - igceke, **ibala** - isibazi).

Ukuhlelwa kwemiqondo - ukuhlanganisa imiqondo/imibono ethathwe emithonjeni yolwazi eyahlukene. Isifengqo saleyo mibono ehlanganisiswe.

Umbhalo - isitatimende noma okuqanjiwe okwethulwa ngomlomo, okulotshiwe noma okubukelwayo ngenhloso yokuxhumana.

Ingqikithi - umongo walokho okuxhunywana ngakho. Itheksthi ingaba nomongo ongaphezulu kowodwa, futhi kungenzeka ungabi sobala.

Iphimbo - iphimbo ledlulisa umyalezo wamatheksthi ethulwa ngomlomo. Emathekstini alotshiwe iphimbo lizwakala ngamagama awakhethile umlobi ukuze aveze isimo sakhe. Ezithombeni zebhayisikobho iphimbo lingakhiwa ngomculo noma indlela umdlalo ohleleke ngayo esiteji.

Imibhalo edlulisa imiyalezo – imibhalo yomsebenzi (isib. izincwadi, amaminiti emihlangano, imibiko, imibhalo eyenziwe ngezikhahlamezi)

Ukunikezelana amathuba - izinqubo ezizimase ukunganqamuki kokuxhumana kwabantu ababili, njengokunikeza abanye ithuba lokubeka imibono yabo, ukuphinda okushoyo ukuze okuqondiwe kucace, ukungena nxa kusaxoxwa ukuze kubuyiswe abedukayo, ukwenanela ngemibuzo ukuze kucaciswe okuthile.

Imibhalo ebonwayo - izinto ezibonakalayo ezedlulisa umlayezo (isib. imifanekiso yamafilimu, izithombe, okugqanyiswa ngekhompyutha, izilinganiso amakhathuni kanye nemidwebo yokupendiwe).

Izwi - indawo yomlobi, ngenkathi kufundwa kubukelwe, ofundayo uyakwazi ukuthola umbono wombhali kanye nenhloso yakhe.

Isu lokuhlasela amagama - isu elisetshenziswa uma kufundwa amagama angaziwa (isib. Ukulinqamula igama ngamalunga kuphinde kubhekwe iziphongozo nezijobelelo zalo, kufuniselwa incazelo).